

900 Series HP 3000 Computer Systems
MPE/iX Developer's Kit
Reference Manual
Volume 2



HP Part No. 36430-90002
Printed in U.S.A. 1994

Second Edition
E0494

UNIX is a registered trademark of UNIX System Laboratories Inc. in the U.S.A. and other countries.

The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice.

Hewlett-Packard makes no warranty of any kind with regard to this material, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose. Hewlett-Packard shall not be liable for errors contained herein or for direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages in connection with the furnishing or use of this material.

Hewlett-Packard assumes no responsibility for the use or reliability of its software on equipment that is not furnished by Hewlett-Packard.

This document contains proprietary information that is protected by copyright. All rights are reserved. Reproduction, adaptation, or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

Copyright © 1994 by Hewlett-Packard Company

Copyright © 1994 by Mortice Kern Systems Inc.

Use, duplication, or disclosure by the U.S. Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (c) (1) (ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at DFARS 252.227-7013. Rights for non-DoD U.S. Government Departments and agencies are as set forth in FAR 52.227-19 (c) (1,2).

Hewlett-Packard Company
3000 Hanover Street
Palo Alto, CA 94304 U.S.A.

Restricted Rights Legend

Printing History

The following table lists the printings of this document, together with the respective release dates for each edition. The software version indicates the version of the software product at the time that this document was issued. Many product releases do not require changes to the document; therefore, do not expect a one-to-one correspondence between product releases and document editions.

Edition	Date	Software Version
First Edition	October 1992	A.00.00
Second Edition	April 1994	C.50.00

Preface

MPE/iX, Multiprogramming Executive with Integrated POSIX, is the latest in a series of operating systems for the HP 3000 line of computers.

In HP documentation and in talking with HP 3000 users, you will encounter references to MPE XL, the direct predecessor of MPE/iX. MPE/iX is a superset of MPE XL. All programs written for MPE XL will run without change under MPE/iX. You can continue to use MPE XL system documentation, although it may not refer to features added to the operating system to support POSIX (for example, hierarchical directories).

Finally, you may encounter references to MPE V, which is the operating system for HP 3000s not based on PA-RISC architecture. MPE V software can be run on the PA-RISC (Series 900) HP 3000s in what is known as *compatibility mode*.

The *MPE/iX Developer's Kit Reference Manual Volume 2* (36430-90002) describes the POSIX/iX library provided with the MPE/iX Developer's Kit (36430A) on 900 Series HP 3000 computer systems. This manual is intended for experienced C programmers.

This manual is organized as follows:

- Chapter 1** **Introduction** provides a summary overview of the supplemental libraries and facilities that are available through the MPE/iX Developer's Kit (product number 36430A).
- Chapter 2** **SVID IPC Library Function Descriptions** provides information on a set of C/iX library functions that provides interprocess communication services to applications requiring information exchange and resource synchronization between multiple processes.
- Chapter 3** **TERMINFO Database** provides information on the database that describes terminal and printer capabilities.
- Chapter 4** **CURSES** presents the syntax and descriptions of the CURSES routines and macros, arranged alphabetically.

Conventions

- nonitalics** Within syntax descriptions, nonitalicized words represent literals. Enter them exactly as shown. This includes angle brackets appearing within syntactic descriptions. For example,
- ```
#include <unistd.h>
```
- Nonitalicized words and punctuation characters appear in **computer font**. In the following example, you must provide the keyword, function name, parentheses, and trailing semicolon:
- ```
int ccode();
```
- italics* Within syntax descriptions, italicized words denote argument names, program names, or strings that you must replace with an appropriate value. In the following example, you must replace *number* and *denom* with the respective integers you want to pass to the **div** function:
- ```
div(number, denom);
```
- [ ] Within syntax descriptions, italicized brackets surround optional elements. For example, the *item* list in the **scanf()** function call is optional:
- ```
scanf(format [, item [, item] ...] );
```
- ... Within syntax descriptions, a horizontal ellipses indicates that a previous element can be repeated. For example:
- ```
[, item]...
```
- Within examples, vertical and horizontal ellipses may show where portions of the example were omitted.

# Contents

---

## 1. Introduction

|                                                                        |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| What Is the SVID IPC Library? . . . . .                                | 1-1 |
| What Is the TERINFO Database? . . . . .                                | 1-2 |
| What Is the CURSES Library? . . . . .                                  | 1-2 |
| How to Use This Manual . . . . .                                       | 1-3 |
| Developing Applications Using the MPE/iX Shell and Utilities . . . . . | 1-3 |
| Understanding MPE/iX . . . . .                                         | 1-4 |

## 2. SVID IPC Library Function Descriptions

|                                                         |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Overview of SVID IPC . . . . .                          | 2-1  |
| Message queues . . . . .                                | 2-2  |
| Shared memory . . . . .                                 | 2-3  |
| Semaphores . . . . .                                    | 2-3  |
| Access control . . . . .                                | 2-4  |
| Using the SVID IPC Library . . . . .                    | 2-4  |
| Managing SVID IPC Services . . . . .                    | 2-5  |
| IPCS utility . . . . .                                  | 2-5  |
| IPCRM utility . . . . .                                 | 2-5  |
| SVIPC utility . . . . .                                 | 2-5  |
| Conformance and Implementation Considerations . . . . . | 2-6  |
| SVID IPC Library Function Descriptions . . . . .        | 2-6  |
| ftok . . . . .                                          | 2-7  |
| msgctl . . . . .                                        | 2-9  |
| msgget . . . . .                                        | 2-12 |
| msgrcv . . . . .                                        | 2-15 |
| msgsnd . . . . .                                        | 2-19 |
| semctl . . . . .                                        | 2-23 |
| semget . . . . .                                        | 2-28 |
| semop . . . . .                                         | 2-32 |
| shmat . . . . .                                         | 2-38 |

Contents-1



|                                        |      |
|----------------------------------------|------|
| shmctl . . . . .                       | 2-41 |
| shmdt . . . . .                        | 2-44 |
| shmget . . . . .                       | 2-46 |
| SVID IPC Header Descriptions . . . . . | 2-50 |
| sys/ipc.h . . . . .                    | 2-51 |
| sys/msg.h . . . . .                    | 2-53 |
| sys/sem.h . . . . .                    | 2-55 |
| sys/shm.h . . . . .                    | 2-57 |

### 3. TERMINFO Database

|                                                      |      |
|------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Introduction . . . . .                               | 3-1  |
| TERMINFO Source File . . . . .                       | 3-2  |
| Syntax of Device Descriptions . . . . .              | 3-2  |
| Padding . . . . .                                    | 3-4  |
| Parameterized Strings . . . . .                      | 3-5  |
| Stack Operators . . . . .                            | 3-6  |
| Creating Device Descriptions . . . . .               | 3-8  |
| Special Characters . . . . .                         | 3-9  |
| Names of Capabilities . . . . .                      | 3-11 |
| Boolean Capabilities . . . . .                       | 3-12 |
| Numeric Capabilities . . . . .                       | 3-13 |
| String Capabilities . . . . .                        | 3-15 |
| Configuration Capabilities . . . . .                 | 3-30 |
| Detailed Descriptions . . . . .                      | 3-33 |
| cmdch . . . . .                                      | 3-33 |
| da . . . . .                                         | 3-33 |
| gn . . . . .                                         | 3-33 |
| if, iprog, is1, is2, is3 . . . . .                   | 3-33 |
| lm . . . . .                                         | 3-34 |
| xenl . . . . .                                       | 3-34 |
| os, hc . . . . .                                     | 3-34 |
| ascs . . . . .                                       | 3-34 |
| Cursor Movement and Scrolling Capabilities . . . . . | 3-36 |
| Detailed Descriptions . . . . .                      | 3-38 |
| ind, ri . . . . .                                    | 3-38 |
| cuf . . . . .                                        | 3-39 |
| csr . . . . .                                        | 3-39 |
| cup, cuu . . . . .                                   | 3-39 |

|                                                |      |
|------------------------------------------------|------|
| home . . . . .                                 | 3-39 |
| ri, ind . . . . .                              | 3-39 |
| mir . . . . .                                  | 3-39 |
| smcup, rmcup . . . . .                         | 3-39 |
| xt . . . . .                                   | 3-40 |
| Edit Capabilities . . . . .                    | 3-40 |
| Detailed Descriptions . . . . .                | 3-42 |
| ich1 . . . . .                                 | 3-42 |
| in . . . . .                                   | 3-42 |
| ip . . . . .                                   | 3-42 |
| Attribute Capabilities . . . . .               | 3-43 |
| Handling Color . . . . .                       | 3-44 |
| ncv Variable . . . . .                         | 3-45 |
| Turning Off Attributes . . . . .               | 3-45 |
| Setting Arbitrary Modes . . . . .              | 3-46 |
| Tabs and Margins . . . . .                     | 3-48 |
| Terminal Key Capabilities . . . . .            | 3-50 |
| Miscellaneous Capabilities . . . . .           | 3-52 |
| Capabilities Sorted by Variable Name . . . . . | 3-54 |
| Boolean Capabilities . . . . .                 | 3-55 |
| Numeric Capabilities . . . . .                 | 3-57 |
| String Capabilities . . . . .                  | 3-59 |
| TERMINFO Compiled File . . . . .               | 3-74 |
| Description . . . . .                          | 3-74 |
| Related Information . . . . .                  | 3-76 |
| Implementation Considerations . . . . .        | 3-77 |
| Portability . . . . .                          | 3-77 |
| <br>4. <b>CURSES</b>                           |      |
| Environment Variables . . . . .                | 4-2  |
| TERMINFO Environment Variable . . . . .        | 4-2  |
| COLUMNS Environment Variable . . . . .         | 4-2  |
| LINES Environment Variable . . . . .           | 4-3  |
| Implementation Details . . . . .               | 4-3  |
| Global Variables . . . . .                     | 4-5  |
| Implementation Considerations . . . . .        | 4-6  |
| Portability . . . . .                          | 4-6  |
| Descriptions of CURSES Routines . . . . .      | 4-6  |

|                                                                                                      |      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| addch waddch mvaddch mvwaddch . . . . .                                                              | 4-7  |
| addchstr waddchstr addchnstr waddchnstr mvaddchstr<br>mvwaddchstr mvaddchnstr mvwaddchnstr . . . . . | 4-12 |
| addstr waddstr addnstr waddnstr mvaddstr mvwaddstr<br>mvaddnstr mvwaddnstr . . . . .                 | 4-15 |
| attroff wattroff attron wattron attrset wattrset standend<br>wstandend standout wstandout . . . . .  | 4-18 |
| baudrate . . . . .                                                                                   | 4-22 |
| beep flash . . . . .                                                                                 | 4-23 |
| bkgdset wbkgdset bkgd wbkgd . . . . .                                                                | 4-24 |
| border box wborder . . . . .                                                                         | 4-27 |
| cbreak nocbreak . . . . .                                                                            | 4-31 |
| clear wclear . . . . .                                                                               | 4-33 |
| clearok . . . . .                                                                                    | 4-35 |
| clrtoebot wclrtoebot . . . . .                                                                       | 4-36 |
| clrtoeol wclrtoeol . . . . .                                                                         | 4-38 |
| color_pair . . . . .                                                                                 | 4-40 |
| copywin . . . . .                                                                                    | 4-41 |
| curs_set . . . . .                                                                                   | 4-43 |
| def_prog_mode def_shell_mode . . . . .                                                               | 4-44 |
| del_curterm . . . . .                                                                                | 4-46 |
| delay_output . . . . .                                                                               | 4-48 |
| delch wdelch mvdelch mvwdelch . . . . .                                                              | 4-49 |
| deleteln wdeleteln . . . . .                                                                         | 4-51 |
| delscreen . . . . .                                                                                  | 4-53 |
| delwin . . . . .                                                                                     | 4-54 |
| derwin . . . . .                                                                                     | 4-56 |
| dupwin . . . . .                                                                                     | 4-58 |
| echo noecho . . . . .                                                                                | 4-59 |
| echochar wechochar . . . . .                                                                         | 4-61 |
| endwin isendwin . . . . .                                                                            | 4-63 |
| erase werase . . . . .                                                                               | 4-65 |
| erasechar . . . . .                                                                                  | 4-67 |
| flushinp . . . . .                                                                                   | 4-68 |
| getch wgetch mvgetch mvwgetch ungetch . . . . .                                                      | 4-69 |
| getstr wgetstr wgetnstr mvgetstr mvwgetstr . . . . .                                                 | 4-76 |
| getyx getparyx getbegyx getmaxyx . . . . .                                                           | 4-78 |
| halfdelay . . . . .                                                                                  | 4-80 |

|                                                                                              |       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| has_color can_change_color color_content pair_content . . .                                  | 4-81  |
| has_ic has_il . . . . .                                                                      | 4-83  |
| idlok . . . . .                                                                              | 4-84  |
| immedok . . . . .                                                                            | 4-86  |
| inch winch mvinch mvwinch . . . . .                                                          | 4-87  |
| inchstr winchstr inchnstr winchnstr mvinchstr mvwinchstr<br>mvinchnstr mvwinchnstr . . . . . | 4-89  |
| init_color init_pair . . . . .                                                               | 4-92  |
| initscr . . . . .                                                                            | 4-95  |
| insch wansch mvinsch mvwansch . . . . .                                                      | 4-96  |
| insdelln winsdelln . . . . .                                                                 | 4-98  |
| insertln winsertln . . . . .                                                                 | 4-100 |
| insstr winsstr insnstr winsnstr mvinsstr mvwinsstr mvinsnstr<br>mvwinsnstr . . . . .         | 4-102 |
| instr winstr innstr winnstr mvinstr mvwinstr mvinnstr<br>mvwinnstr . . . . .                 | 4-105 |
| intrflush . . . . .                                                                          | 4-108 |
| keyname . . . . .                                                                            | 4-110 |
| keypad . . . . .                                                                             | 4-111 |
| killchar . . . . .                                                                           | 4-113 |
| leaveok . . . . .                                                                            | 4-114 |
| longname . . . . .                                                                           | 4-116 |
| meta . . . . .                                                                               | 4-117 |
| move wmove . . . . .                                                                         | 4-119 |
| mvcur . . . . .                                                                              | 4-121 |
| mvwin . . . . .                                                                              | 4-123 |
| napms . . . . .                                                                              | 4-125 |
| newpad . . . . .                                                                             | 4-126 |
| newterm . . . . .                                                                            | 4-128 |
| newwin . . . . .                                                                             | 4-130 |
| nl nonl . . . . .                                                                            | 4-132 |
| nodelay . . . . .                                                                            | 4-133 |
| notimeout . . . . .                                                                          | 4-135 |
| overlay overwrite . . . . .                                                                  | 4-137 |
| pair_content . . . . .                                                                       | 4-143 |
| prefresh pnoutrefresh . . . . .                                                              | 4-144 |
| printw wprintw mvprintw mvwprintw vwprintw . . . . .                                         | 4-146 |
| qiflush noqiflush . . . . .                                                                  | 4-148 |

## Contents-5

|                                                                                  |       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| raw noraw . . . . .                                                              | 4-149 |
| redrawwin wredrawln . . . . .                                                    | 4-151 |
| refresh wrefresh doupdate wnoutrefresh . . . . .                                 | 4-153 |
| reset_prog_mode reset_shell_mode . . . . .                                       | 4-155 |
| resetty savetty . . . . .                                                        | 4-156 |
| scanw wscanw mvscanw mvwscanw vwscanw . . . . .                                  | 4-157 |
| scr_dump scr_restore . . . . .                                                   | 4-159 |
| srcl wscr1 scrol . . . . .                                                       | 4-161 |
| scrollok . . . . .                                                               | 4-163 |
| set_curterm . . . . .                                                            | 4-165 |
| set_term . . . . .                                                               | 4-167 |
| setscrreg . . . . .                                                              | 4-168 |
| setupterm setterm . . . . .                                                      | 4-170 |
| start_color . . . . .                                                            | 4-172 |
| subwin . . . . .                                                                 | 4-174 |
| termattrs . . . . .                                                              | 4-176 |
| termname . . . . .                                                               | 4-177 |
| tgetent . . . . .                                                                | 4-178 |
| tgetflag . . . . .                                                               | 4-180 |
| tgetnum . . . . .                                                                | 4-181 |
| tgetstr . . . . .                                                                | 4-182 |
| tgoto . . . . .                                                                  | 4-184 |
| tigetflag tigetnum tigetstr . . . . .                                            | 4-186 |
| timeout wtimeout . . . . .                                                       | 4-188 |
| touchwin touchline untouchwin wtouchln is_linetouched<br>is_wintouched . . . . . | 4-190 |
| tparm . . . . .                                                                  | 4-193 |
| tputs putp . . . . .                                                             | 4-195 |
| traceon traceoff . . . . .                                                       | 4-197 |
| typeahead . . . . .                                                              | 4-198 |
| unctrl . . . . .                                                                 | 4-200 |
| use_env . . . . .                                                                | 4-201 |
| vidputs vidattr . . . . .                                                        | 4-202 |

## Index

## Contents-6

## Tables

---

|                                                            |       |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| 3-1. Suffixes for Mode and User Preferences . . . . .      | 3-3   |
| 3-2. Syntax of Padding Specifications . . . . .            | 3-4   |
| 3-3. Explanation of Parameter Description . . . . .        | 3-5   |
| 3-4. hp2392a Terminal Cursor Movement . . . . .            | 3-7   |
| 3-5. ANSI Terminal Cursor Movement . . . . .               | 3-8   |
| 3-6. Characters with Special Values . . . . .              | 3-10  |
| 3-7. Boolean Capabilities . . . . .                        | 3-12  |
| 3-8. Numeric Capabilities . . . . .                        | 3-14  |
| 3-9. String Capabilities . . . . .                         | 3-16  |
| 3-10. Configuration Capabilities . . . . .                 | 3-31  |
| 3-11. Glyph to Character Mapping . . . . .                 | 3-34  |
| 3-12. Cursor Movement Capabilities . . . . .               | 3-37  |
| 3-13. Editing Capabilities . . . . .                       | 3-41  |
| 3-14. Attribute Capabilities . . . . .                     | 3-43  |
| 3-15. ncv Variable . . . . .                               | 3-45  |
| 3-16. sgr Parameters . . . . .                             | 3-47  |
| 3-17. Margins and Tabs . . . . .                           | 3-48  |
| 3-18. Terminal Key Capabilities . . . . .                  | 3-51  |
| 3-19. Miscellaneous Capabilities . . . . .                 | 3-52  |
| 3-20. Boolean Capabilities . . . . .                       | 3-55  |
| 3-21. Numeric Capabilities . . . . .                       | 3-57  |
| 3-22. String Capabilities . . . . .                        | 3-60  |
| 4-1. Definitions of Global Variables . . . . .             | 4-5   |
| 4-2. Constant Values for Highlighting Attributes . . . . . | 4-9   |
| 4-3. Constant Values for Characters . . . . .              | 4-10  |
| 4-4. Constant Values for Highlighting Attributes . . . . . | 4-20  |
| 4-5. Constant Values for Borders . . . . .                 | 4-29  |
| 4-6. Constant Values for Function Keys . . . . .           | 4-71  |
| 4-7. Status Values . . . . .                               | 4-171 |
| 4-8. Constant Values for Highlighting Attributes . . . . . | 4-203 |

**Contents-7**

## Introduction

---

This chapter provides a summary overview of supplemental libraries and facilities that are available through the MPE/iX Developer's Kit (product # 36430A). The POSIX/iX library, also available through the MPE/iX Developer's Kit, is fully described in the *MPE/iX Developer's Kit Reference Manual Volume 1* (36430-90001).

The following topics are discussed in this chapter:

- What is the SVID IPC library?
- What is the TERMINFO database?
- What is Curses?
- How to use this manual.
- Developing applications using the MPE/iX Shell and Utilities.
- Understanding MPE/iX.

---

### What Is the SVID IPC Library?

The SVID IPC library contains a set of C/iX library functions that provides interprocess communication services to applications requiring information exchange and resource synchronization between multiple processes.

These C/iX library functions emulate the behavior of a set of interprocess communication and synchronization functions defined by the *AT&T System V Interface Definition* (SVID2). For this reason, the set of IPC functions provided in the MPE/iX Developer's Kit is referred to as "SVID IPC."

Refer to Chapter 2 for a complete description of the functions available in the SVID IPC library.

---

## What Is the TERMINFO Database?

The **TERMINFO** database describes terminal and printer capabilities. A wide range of capabilities can be defined that include, for example, the number of lines and columns for the device, whether or not the terminal wraps at the right margin, or what character sequence causes a carriage return. The database is used by screen-oriented programs such as **VI** or **CURSES** programs. By using **TERMINFO** to handle the capabilities of individual devices, a program can work with a variety of devices without any changes to the code.

Refer to Chapter 3 for a complete description of the **TERMINFO** database.

---

## What Is the CURSES Library?

The **CURSES** library contains a set of C/iX library functions that provides screen management services consisting of routines and macros for creating and modifying input and output to a terminal screen. **CURSES** contains routines for creating windows, highlighting text, writing to the screen, reading from user input, and moving the cursor.

**CURSES** is designed to optimize screen update activities. For example, when updating the screen, **CURSES** minimizes the number of characters sent to the terminal to move and update the screen.

**CURSES** is a terminal-independent package, providing a common user interface to a variety of terminal types. Its portability is facilitated by the **TERMINFO** database which contains a compiled definition of each terminal type. By referring to the database information, **CURSES** gains access to low-level details about individual terminals.

Refer to Chapter 4 for a complete description of the routines available in the **CURSES** package.

### 1-2 Introduction



---

## How to Use This Manual

This manual is intended to be used with the following four manuals:

- *MPE/iX Developer's Kit Reference Manual Volume 1* (36430-90001)
- *HP C/iX Library Reference Manual* (30026-90001)
- *MPE/iX Shell and Utilities Reference Manual, Volumes 1 and 2* (36431-60001)
- *The POSIX.1 Standard - A Programmer's Guide* (36430-90003)

The four manuals listed above contain descriptions of C library functions available through the POSIX/iX library provided with the MPE/iX Developer's Kit. Refer to the *MPE/iX Developer's Kit Reference Manual Volume 1* (36430-90001) for more information about using these manuals.

The POSIX/iX library is an implementation on 900 Series HP 3000 computer systems of many of the C library functions and features defined in

- IEEE Standard 1003.1-1990 (ISO/IEC 9945-1:1990)
- Appendix B of the IEEE P1003.2/D11.2

---

|             |                                                                                                           |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note</b> | All references to POSIX.1 in this manual refer to the 1990 revision of the POSIX.1 standard, 1003.1-1990. |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

---

---

## Developing Applications Using the MPE/iX Shell and Utilities

Application development using libraries provided with the MPE/iX Developer's Kit must be accomplished through the MPE/iX Shell and Utilities, a command interpreter that provides a set of commands and utilities useful for application development. The MPE/iX Shell is based on the Korn Shell, a command interpreter available on many computer systems.

To invoke the MPE/iX Shell from the MPE/iX Command Interpreter (CI), enter either of the following at the CI prompt:

```
:RUN SH.HPBIN.SYS;INFO="-L"
```

```
:SH.HPBIN.SYS -L
```

---

**Note**            The L must be entered in uppercase.

---

For more information about the MPE/iX Shell and Utilities, refer to the following manuals:

- *MPE/iX Shell and Utilities Reference Manual, Volumes 1 and 2* (36431-60001)
- *MPE/iX Shell and Utilities User's Guide* (36431-90002)

Compiling and linking an application that requires libraries available through the MPE/iX Developer's Kit must be accomplished through the **c89** command available in the MPE/iX Shell. For detailed information about using the **c89** command, refer to the *MPE/iX Shell and Utilities Reference Manual, Volumes 1 and 2* (36431-60001).

---

## Understanding MPE/iX

The MPE/iX Developer's Kit provides facilities that allow you to develop portable applications while minimizing the need to understand underlying MPE/iX operating system features. Some of the topics discussed in the manual require that you have an understanding of underlying features of the MPE/iX operating system.

Additional MPE/iX documentation is available that contains information about MPE/iX features not discussed in detail in this manual. This manual briefly summarizes these features and provides pointers to the manuals where you can acquire additional information.

The following manual provides an introduction to many of the MPE/iX features that you will need to understand:

- *New Features of MPE/iX: Using the Hierarchical File System* (32650-90351)

### 1-4 Introduction

## SVID IPC Library Function Descriptions

---

This chapter describes a set of C/iX library functions that provides interprocess communication services to applications requiring information exchange and resource synchronization between multiple processes.

These C/iX library functions emulate the behavior of a set of interprocess communication and synchronization functions defined by the *AT&T System V Interface Definition* (SVID2). For this reason, the set of IPC functions provided in the MPE/iX Developer's Kit is referred to as "SVID IPC."

This chapter is organized in the following manner:

- Overview of the SVID IPC facilities
- Using the SVID IPC library
- Managing SVID IPC services
- Conformance and implementation considerations
- Detailed descriptions of SVID IPC functions
- Descriptions of SVID IPC headers

---

### Overview of SVID IPC

Developing an application consisting of several processes usually requires some form of information exchange and resource synchronization. Many applications developed for use on UNIX<sup>®</sup>-based computer systems use the IPC services defined by the *AT&T System V Interface Definition* (SVID2).

The MPE/iX SVID IPC library is provided (along with the POSIX.1/iX library) to enable application developers to substantially reduce the costs associated with successfully porting a UNIX-based application to a Series 900 HP 3000 computer system.

The SVID IPC library provides three facilities and an access control feature:

- Message queues
- Shared memory
- Semaphores
- Access control

For each of the three SVID IPC facilities there are C/iX library functions available for allocation, deallocation, and control of the facilities.

Use an *xxxget()* function to either create a resource of the desired type (for example, a shared memory area) or obtain an identifier for an existing resource.

Use an *xxxctl()* function to perform a variety of control operations on an IPC resource. Common control operations include returning usage statistics about a resource and modifying attributes of the resource.

Additional functions are provided in each facility to perform activities unique to the facility. For example, the message queue facility provides functions to write to and read from a specified message queue.

## **Message queues**

Message queues are one form of process-to-process communication. Data sent from a process to a message queue is copied into a data buffer which is then linked into the list of data buffers for that queue.

Processes can read and write to message queues in any arbitrary order. For example, a process can send a message to a queue even if no other process is currently waiting to read a message from the same queue.

Following are the functions available to manage SVID IPC message queues:

|                 |                                               |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <b>msgctl()</b> | Perform control operations on a message queue |
| <b>msgget()</b> | Locate or allocate a message queue            |
| <b>msgrcv()</b> | Receive a message from a message queue        |
| <b>msgsnd()</b> | Send a message to a message queue             |

## **2-2 SVID IPC Library Function Descriptions**

## Shared memory

The shared memory facility allows processes to communicate via a common memory area mapped to the address space of each process sharing the memory. When a process modifies the contents of a shared memory area, the data is immediately available to other processes.

The most common usage of this facility is to allocate application global data needed by all processes sharing the memory area. An example of shared memory access is when one process writes data to a shared memory area and a second process reads the data from the same shared memory area. In this case, there is no overhead involved in copying the data from process A to process B. Process B has immediate access to the data through the shared memory area.

Following are the functions available to manage SVID IPC shared memory.

|                       |                                                    |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <code>shmat()</code>  | Attach a process to a shared memory area           |
| <code>shmctl()</code> | Perform control operations on a shared memory area |
| <code>shmdt()</code>  | Detach a process from a shared memory area         |
| <code>shmget()</code> | Locate or allocate a shared memory area            |

## Semaphores

The semaphore facility allows processes to synchronize operations when sharing a common resource. An example of semaphore facility use is when two or more processes synchronize access to a commonly shared memory area. In this case, a process performing a write operation to a shared memory area can suspend itself until other processes have completed read operations on the same shared memory area.

Following are the functions available to manage SVID IPC semaphores:

|                       |                                                 |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <code>semctl()</code> | Perform control functions on the semaphore set. |
| <code>semget()</code> | Locate or allocate a semaphore set.             |
| <code>semop()</code>  | Operate on the semaphore set.                   |

## Access control

Access control is provided through a key value, known to the application using SVID IPC functions, that is associated with each resource being shared by multiple processes. This key is used by different processes who have agreed to manage access to the resource using the shared key. All SVID IPC facilities require the user to supply a key to be used by the `msgget()`, `semget()`, and `shmget()` functions to obtain identifiers.

The `ftok()` function provides a user with a key value that can be used by processes sharing the same resource. The key value returned by `ftok()` is based upon a file name to which the application has access.

There are many other ways to form keys, but it is necessary for each system to define standards for forming them. If a standard is not adhered to, it is possible for unrelated processes to unintentionally interfere with each other's operation. Therefore, it is strongly suggested that the *id* parameter of `ftok()`, if used for key generation, should in some sense refer to a project so that keys do not conflict across a given system.

---

|             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note</b> | The successful management of SVID IPC facilities is predicated upon the assumption that all accessors of a shared resource have agreed to access the resource through a shared key. If a process does not use an agreed-upon scheme to access the shared resource, proper management of that resource cannot be guaranteed. |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

---

---

## Using the SVID IPC Library

The SVID IPC library is implemented as a C/iX relocatable library located in the file `/lib/libsvipc.a`.

In order to add the SVID IPC library to your list of relocatable libraries at link time, specify `svipc` with the `-l` option of the `c89` command available through the MPE/iX Shell. For example:

```
c89 -o foo foo.c -lsvipc
```

### 2-4 SVID IPC Library Function Descriptions

---

## Managing SVID IPC Services

Interactive utilities are provided through the MPE/iX Command Interpreter to manage the interprocess communication services provided by SVID IPC functions. These utilities are implemented as MPE/iX command files and located in `HPBIN.SYS`. Each utility provides a built-in help facility that contains detailed information on use.

### IPCS utility

The `IPCS` utility enables a user with system manager (SM) capability to display status information on SVID IPC services currently allocated on the system. This utility can also be used to display current configuration values.

The `IPCS` utility is invoked by entering:

```
IPCS.HPBIN.SYS
```

### IPCRM utility

The `IPCRM` utility enables a user with system manager (SM) capability to interactively remove specific SVID IPC resources from the system, performing the same function as `IPC_RMID` on a `XXXctl()` function call.

The `IPCRM` utility is invoked by entering:

```
IPCRM.HPBIN.SYS
```

### SVIPC utility

The `SVIPC` utility enables a user with system manager (SM) capability to interactively modify current SVID IPC configuration limits.

The `SVIPC` utility is invoked by entering:

```
SVIPC.HPBIN.SYS
```

---

## Conformance and Implementation Considerations

The MPE/iX SVID IPC library was implemented to emulate the behavior of the equivalent SVID-conformant IPC functionality available on the Series 800 HP 9000 computer system.

Please read the “Implementation Considerations” section of each function description prior to using the function in order to understand any implementation-defined behavior or behavior that does not conform to the definition of the function in the *AT&T System V Interface Definition*.

---

## SVID IPC Library Function Descriptions

The following section describes SVID IPC library functions in detail. Function descriptions are arranged alphabetically.



---

## ftok

Returns a key used in calls to `msgget()`, `semget()`, and `shmget()` function calls.

### Syntax

```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ipc.h>

key_t ftok (char *pathname, char id);
```

### Parameters

*pathname* Passes a pointer to a string containing the pathname of a file accessible to the calling process.

*id* Passes a character used to further qualify the returned key.

### Return Values

$\neq -1$  Key value returned.

-1 Error. The specified pathname does not exist or is not accessible to the calling process.

### Description

The `ftok()` function can be used to return a key based on both *pathname* and *id*. This key can be used in subsequent calls to the SVID IPC `msgget()`, `semget()`, and `shmget()` functions.

A different key is returned when called with the same pathname but a different character is passed in *id*.

**ftok**

**Implementation Considerations**

None.

**Errors**

If an error occurs, **errno** is set to the following value.

|        |        |                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| EINVAL | CAUSE  | The <i>pathname</i> parameter points to an invalid address, or <i>pathname</i> specifies a nonexistent file, or the caller does not have the correct access to the pathname. |
|        | ACTION | Make sure that <i>pathname</i> points to a valid and existing pathname to which the caller has access.                                                                       |

**See Also**

msgget(), semget(), shmget()

## msgctl

Provides message control operations.

### Syntax

```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ipc.h>
#include <sys/msg.h>

int msgctl (int msqid, int cmd, struct msqid_ds *buffer);
```

### Parameters

*msqid* Passes a message queue identifier returned by a call to `msgget()`.

*cmd* Passes a command defining the control operation to perform. Valid commands are defined in the “Description” section below.

*buffer* Passes a pointer to a buffer of type `struct msqid_ds` (defined in the `<sys/msg.h>` header). Operations on the buffer are defined by *cmd*. Refer to the “Description” section below.

### Return Values

0 Success.

-1 An error occurred, and `errno` is set to indicate the error condition.

### Description

The `msgctl()` function provides message control operations on the message queue and data structure associated with *msqid*. Control operations are defined by the *cmd* parameter. Following are valid commands to be passed in *cmd*:

**IPC\_RMID** Deallocate the message queue identifier specified by *msqid* and purge the message queue and data structure associated with it. The calling process must have either MPE/iX SM capability, or be the owner or creator of *msqid* (have an effective user ID equal to

## **msgctl**

the value of either the `msg_perm.uid` (owner) or `msg_perm.cuid` (creator) fields in the data structure associated with *msqid*).

**IPC\_SET** Copy data from the following fields of the `msqid_ds` structure pointed to by *buffer* to the corresponding fields in the data structure associated with *msqid*:

- `msg_perm.uid` (owner user ID)
- `msg_perm.gid` (owner group ID)
- Low order 9 bits of `msg_perm.mode`
- `msg_qbytes`

The calling process must have either MPE/iX SM capability or an effective user ID equal to the value of either the `msg_perm.uid` or `msg_perm.cuid` fields in the data structure associated with *msqid*. The caller must have MPE/iX SM capability to increase the value of the `msg_qbytes` field of the data structure associated with *msqid*.

**IPC\_STAT** Copy all data from the structure associated with *msqid* to the data structure pointed to by *buffer*.

## **Implementation Considerations**

None.

## **2-10 SVID IPC Library Function Descriptions**

## Errors

If an error occurs, **errno** is set to one of the following values.

|                |        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>EACCES</b>  | CAUSE  | <i>cmd</i> specifies <b>IPC_STAT</b> and the calling process does not have read permission.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                | ACTION | Ensure that the calling process has read permission for the <i>msqid</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>EFAULT</b>  | CAUSE  | The system detected a NULL or bad address in attempting to use the <i>buffer</i> argument.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                | ACTION | Check to see if the pointer is correctly initialized.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>EINVAL</b>  | CAUSE  | <i>msqid</i> is not a valid message queue identifier, or <i>cmd</i> is not a valid command.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                | ACTION | Check that the <i>msqid</i> parameter is valid and the associated message queue has not been removed, or that <i>cmd</i> is valid.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>EPERM</b>   | CAUSE  | One of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>cmd</i> specifies <b>IPC_RMID</b> or <b>IPC_SET</b> and the calling process does not have either MPE/iX SM capability or an effective user ID equal to the value of either the <b>msg_perm.uid</b> or <b>msg_perm.cuid</b> fields in the data structure associated with <i>msqid</i>.</li> <li>■ <i>cmd</i> specifies <b>IPC_SET</b> and the calling process tried to increase the value of <b>msg_qbytes</b> without having MPE/iX SM capability.</li> </ul> |
|                | ACTION | Ensure that the calling process has the appropriate effective user ID or capability required to perform the requested command.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                |        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>ESYSERR</b> | CAUSE  | An operating system error occurred that does not map directly to any of the above errors.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|                | ACTION | Examine the MPE/iX process error stack for the type of system error.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

## See Also

`msgget()`, `msgrcv()`, `msgsnd()`, SVID2 (Section 12)

---

## msgget

Returns a message queue identifier.

### Syntax

```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ipc.h>
#include <sys/msg.h>

int msgget (key_t key, int msgflg);
```

### Parameters

|               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>key</i>    | Either a user-defined key value to rendezvous with the message queue, or <code>IPC_PRIVATE</code> . If <code>IPC_PRIVATE</code> is specified, a new message queue is created, but other processes cannot rendezvous by <i>key</i> . Refer to the description of <code>ftok()</code> for details about obtaining user-defined key values                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <i>msgflg</i> | Valid flags for this function are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><code>IPC_CREAT</code> If a message queue is not already associated with <i>key</i>, a new message queue identifier is allocated and a message queue and data structure are associated with it. If a message queue identifier is already associated with <i>key</i>, and <code>IPC_EXCL</code> is not specified, <code>msgget()</code> returns the message queue identifier associated with <i>key</i>.</li><li><code>IPC_EXCL</code> If specified with <code>IPC_CREAT</code>, <code>msgget()</code> returns an error if a message queue identifier is already associated with <i>key</i>.</li><li><code>MODE</code> The lower nine bits of <i>msgflg</i> contain access permission bits (similar to the nine-bit mask found in file entries). They define access permissions for the owner, the group, and other users on the system.</li></ul> |

## 2-12 SVID IPC Library Function Descriptions

## Return Values

- >0            Success. A message queue identifier is returned.
- 1            An error occurred, and **errno** is set to indicate the error condition.

## Description

The **msgget()** function returns a message queue identifier associated with the value passed in *key*. A new message queue identifier is allocated and a message queue and data structure are associated with it if:

- The value passed in *key* is equal to **IPC\_PRIVATE**.
- The value passed in *key* does not already have a message queue identifier associated with it, and *msgflg* specifies **IPC\_CREAT**.

The data structure associated with the new message queue identifier is initialized to the following values:

|                      |                                                                         |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>msg_perm.cuid</b> | Effective user ID of the calling process (creator user ID)              |
| <b>msg_perm.uid</b>  | Effective user ID of the calling process (owner user ID)                |
| <b>msg_perm.cgid</b> | Effective group ID of the calling process (creator group ID)            |
| <b>msg_perm.gid</b>  | Effective group ID of the calling process (owner group ID)              |
| <b>msg_perm.mode</b> | Low-order 9 bits are set equal to the low-order 9 bits of <i>msgflg</i> |
| <b>msg_qnum</b>      | Zero                                                                    |
| <b>msg_lspid</b>     | Zero                                                                    |
| <b>msg_lrpid</b>     | Zero                                                                    |
| <b>msg_stime</b>     | Zero                                                                    |
| <b>msg_rtime</b>     | Zero                                                                    |
| <b>msg_ctime</b>     | Current time                                                            |
| <b>msg_qbytes</b>    | System limit                                                            |

## Implementation Considerations

The maximum size of a message is 65536 bytes.

An MPE/iX system manager can use the MPE/iX SVIPC utility to interactively configure:

- The maximum message size

**msgget**

- The maximum number of bytes on a message queue
- The total number of message queues allowed system wide

Refer to the section “Managing SVID IPC Services” for more information.

**Errors**

If an error occurs, **errno** is set to one of the following values.

|         |        |                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| EACCES  | CAUSE  | A message queue identifier exists for <i>key</i> and the calling process does not have permission (specified by the low-order 9 bits of <i>msgflg</i> ).                                          |
|         | ACTION | Ensure that the calling process has appropriate permissions to access the existing message queue associated with <i>key</i> , or specify a unique <i>key</i> value to create a new message queue. |
| EEXIST  | CAUSE  | A message queue identifier exists for <i>key</i> and <i>msgflg</i> specifies both <b>IPC_CREATE</b> and <b>IPC_EXCL</b> .                                                                         |
|         | ACTION | To access the existing message queue associated with <i>key</i> , remove the <b>IPC_EXCL</b> option. Otherwise, a unique <i>key</i> value must be specified.                                      |
| ENOENT  | CAUSE  | A message queue identifier does not exist for <i>key</i> and <i>msgflg</i> does not specify <b>IPC_CREATE</b> .                                                                                   |
|         | ACTION | Specify <b>IPC_CREATE</b> to indicate a message queue should be created if one does not already exist for the specified <i>key</i> value.                                                         |
| ENOSPC  | CAUSE  | The number of message queue identifiers would exceed the system-defined limit.                                                                                                                    |
|         | ACTION | A new message queue cannot be created unless a previously allocated message queue is removed.                                                                                                     |
| ESYSERR | CAUSE  | An operating system error occurred that does not map directly to any of the above errors.                                                                                                         |
|         | ACTION | Examine the MPE/iX process error stack for the type of system error.                                                                                                                              |

**See Also**

`msgctl()`, `msgrcv()`, `msgsnd()`, SVID2 (Section 12)



## msgrcv

Reads a message from a message queue.

### Syntax

```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ipc.h>
#include <sys/msg.h>

int msgrcv (int msqid, void *msgp, int msgsz,
 long msgtyp, int msgflg);
```

### Parameters

*msqid* Passes message queue identifier returned by a call to `msgget()`.

*msgp* Passes a pointer to a buffer whose structure is similar to the *msgbuf* example template located in `<msg.h>`, for example:

```
struct example_msgbuf {

 long mtype; /* message type */
 char mtext[your_buffer_size]; /* message text */

};
```

where *your\_buffer\_size* is an integer specifying the size of the buffer. The **mtype** field stores the received message's type as specified by the process that sent the message. The **mtext** field stores the text of the message. The size of **mtext** is specified by the *msgsz* argument.

*msgsz* Passes the size, in bytes, of **mtext**. Valid values are from 0 to a system-defined limit.

*msgtyp* Passes a value specifying the type of message requested. Following are valid values and their meanings:

0            Read the first message on the queue.

## **msgrcv**

- >0      Read the first message on the queue whose type equals *msgtyp*.
- <0      Read a message from the queue whose type is the lowest type of all messages in that queue that is less than or equal to the absolute value of *msgtyp*.

*msgflg*      Passes a value defining what action to take if either a message specified by *msgtyp* is not found on the message queue or the message is too large to fit in the buffer. Flags are:

- IPC\_NOWAIT      The calling process is not suspended. Control returns immediately with **errno** set to **ENOMSG**.
- MSG\_NOERROR      If the message to receive is larger than *msgsz*, the message is truncated to *msgsz* bytes. No error indication is given.

If *msgflg* does not specify **IPC\_NOWAIT**, the calling process suspends execution until a message satisfying the *msgtyp* specifications is placed on the queue. When this occurs, control returns to **msgrcv()**. If **MSG\_NOERROR** is not set, and the selected message is larger than the buffer pointed to by *msgp*, **msgrcv()** returns an error and sets **errno** to **E2BIG**.

## **Return Values**

- >=0      Success. The number of bytes actually placed into the **mtext** field of the data structure pointed to by *msgp* is returned.
- 1      An error occurred, and **errno** is set to indicate the error condition.

## **Description**

The **msgrcv()** function reads a message from the message queue specified by *msqid* and places it in the buffer pointed to by *msgp*.

If the **MSG\_NOERROR** option is set in *msgflg*, the received message is truncated to *msgsz* bytes if it is larger than *msgsz*. The truncated part of the message is lost and no indication of the truncation is given.

## **2-16 SVID IPC Library Function Descriptions**

## **msgrcv**

If the calling process is suspended waiting for a message, the following conditions will cause **msgrcv()** to return an error and set **errno** to indicate the error condition.

- The message queue specified by *msqid* is removed from the system
- The calling process receives a signal that is to be caught.

If **msgrcv()** is successful, the following fields of the data structure associated with *msqid* are updated to the indicated values:

**msg\_qnum**   Decrement by 1  
**msg\_lrpid**   PID of the calling process  
**msg\_rtime**   Current time

### **Implementation Considerations**

If a process suspended during execution of **msgrcv()** receives a signal, control returns to the user with **errno** set to **EINTR**. Disabled signals are ignored.

### **Errors**

If an error occurs, **errno** is set to one of the following values.

## **msgrcv**

|                |        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>E2BIG</b>   | CAUSE  | <i>msgsz</i> is less than the size of the message and <i>msgflg</i> does not specify <b>MSG_NOERROR</b> .                                                                                                          |
|                | ACTION | Increase the <i>msgsz</i> parameter and associated buffer space, or specify the <b>MSG_NOERROR</b> option to allow truncation of the received message.                                                             |
| <b>EACCES</b>  | CAUSE  | The calling process does not have permission.                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                | ACTION | Ensure that the calling process has read access for the message queue.                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>EFAULT</b>  | CAUSE  | The system detected a NULL or bad address in attempting to use the <i>msgp</i> argument.                                                                                                                           |
|                | ACTION | Check to see if the pointer is correctly initialized.                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>EIDRM</b>   | CAUSE  | The message queue specified by <i>msqid</i> was removed while the process was suspended in <b>msgrcv()</b> .                                                                                                       |
|                | ACTION | None.                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>EINTR</b>   | CAUSE  | A process waited in <b>msgrcv()</b> was interrupted by a signal.                                                                                                                                                   |
|                | ACTION | Application dependent.                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>EINVAL</b>  | CAUSE  | <i>msqid</i> is not a valid message queue identifier, or <i>msgsz</i> is less than 0 or greater than the system-defined limit.                                                                                     |
|                | ACTION | Check the <i>msqid</i> to make sure it is valid and the message queue has not been removed from the system. Verify that a positive <i>msgsz</i> was specified that does not exceed the currently configured limit. |
| <b>ENOMSG</b>  | CAUSE  | The specified message queue does not contain a message of the type specified in <i>mtype</i> and <i>msgflg</i> specifies <b>IPC_NOWAIT</b> .                                                                       |
|                | ACTION | None. Application dependent. The receive operation can be retried.                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>ESYSERR</b> | CAUSE  | An operating system error occurred that does not map directly to any of the above errors.                                                                                                                          |
|                | ACTION | Examine the MPE/iX process error stack for the type of system error.                                                                                                                                               |

## **See Also**

**msgctl()**, **msgget()**, **msgsnd()**, **SVID2** (Section 12)

## msgsnd

Sends a message to a message queue.

### Syntax

```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ipc.h>
#include <sys/msg.h>

int msgsnd (int msqid, void *msgp, int msgsz,
 int msgflg);
```

### Parameters

*msqid* Passes a message queue identifier returned by a call to `msgget()`.

*msgp* Passes a pointer to a buffer whose structure is similar to the *msgbuf* example template located in `<msg.h>`, for example:

```
struct example_msgbuf {

 long mtype; /* message type */
 char mtext[your_buffer_size]; /* message text */

};
```

where *your\_buffer\_size* is an integer specifying the size of the buffer. The **mtype** field stores a positive integer value that can be used by a receiving process for message selection (refer to `msgrcv()`). The **mtext** field stores the text of the message. The size of **mtext** is specified by the *msgsz* argument.

*msgsz* The size, in bytes, of **mtext**. Valid values are from 0 to a system-defined limit.

*msgflg* Passes a value defining what action to take if the number of bytes passed would cause the size of the specified queue to exceed the system-defined limit (**msg\_bytes**), the total size of message

## **msgsnd**

data on this queue would exceed the system-defined limit, or the system-wide message buffer pool is temporarily depleted due to the amount of data queued to all message queues.

Flags are:

**IPC\_NOWAIT**     The calling process is not suspended. Control returns immediately with **errno** set to **EAGAIN**.

If *msgflg* does not specify **IPC\_NOWAIT** and one of the previous conditions would occur, the calling process suspends execution. When the condition that caused the suspension no longer exists, **msgsnd()** continues execution.

## **Return Values**

0                Success.

-1               An error occurred, and **errno** is set to indicate the error condition.

## **Description**

The **msgsnd()** function sends a message stored in the buffer pointed to by *msgp* to the message queue associated with *msqid*.

If the message queue associated with *msqid* is removed from the system while the calling process is suspended waiting to send a message, **msgsnd()** returns an error and sets **errno** to **EIDRM**.

If **msgsnd()** is successful, the following fields of the data structure associated with *msqid* are updated to the indicated values:

**msg\_qnum**    Incremented by 1  
**msg\_lrpid**   PID of the calling process  
**msg\_rtime**   Current time

## Implementation Considerations

If a process suspended during execution of `msgsnd()` receives a signal, control returns to the user with `errno` set to `EINTR`. Disabled signals are ignored.

## Errors

If an error occurs, `errno` is set to one of the following values.

|               |        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>EACCES</b> | CAUSE  | The calling process does not have permission.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|               | ACTION | Ensure that the calling process has write permission for the message queue.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>EAGAIN</b> | CAUSE  | <i>msgflg</i> specifies <code>IPC_NOWAIT</code> and either the number of bytes passed would cause the size of the specified queue to exceed the system-defined limit, the total size of message data on this queue would exceed the system-defined limit, or the system-wide message buffer pool is temporarily depleted due to the amount of data queued to all message queues. |
|               | ACTION | None. Application dependent. The send operation can be retried later.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>EFAULT</b> | CAUSE  | The system detected a NULL or bad address in attempting to use the <i>msgp</i> argument.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|               | ACTION | Check to see if the pointer is correctly initialized.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>EIDRM</b>  | CAUSE  | The message queue specified by <i>msqid</i> was removed while <code>msgsnd()</code> was waiting on a message.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|               | ACTION | None.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>EINTR</b>  | CAUSE  | <code>msgsnd()</code> was interrupted by a signal.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|               | ACTION | None. Application dependent.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

## **msgsnd**

|         |        |                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| EINVAL  | CAUSE  | <i>msqid</i> is not a valid message queue identifier, or <i>msgsz</i> is less than 0 or greater than the system-defined limit, or <b>mtype</b> is less than 0.            |
|         | ACTION | Check the parameters to make sure the <i>msqid</i> is valid and has not been removed from the system, and that the <i>msgsz</i> and <b>mtype</b> are within valid ranges. |
| ESYSERR | CAUSE  | An operating system error occurred that does not map directly to any of the above errors.                                                                                 |
|         | ACTION | Examine the MPE/iX process error stack for the type of system error.                                                                                                      |

## **See Also**

`msgctl()`, `msgget()`, `msgrcv()`, SVID2 (Section 12)



---

## semctl

Provides semaphore control operations.

### Syntax

```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ipc.h>
#include <sys/sem.h>

int semctl (int semid, int semnum, int cmd,
 semun semarg);
```

### Parameters

- semid* Passes a semaphore identifier returned by a call to `semget()`.
- semnum* Passes a value indicating a particular semaphore in the semaphore set certain commands specified in *cmd* will apply to, if applicable.
- cmd* Passes a command defining the control operation to perform. Valid commands are defined in the “Description” section below.
- semarg* Passes an argument containing information about the semaphore set. Operations using *semarg* are defined by *cmd*. Refer to the “Description” section below. The argument passed must be of type `union semun`, having the following structure:

```
union semun {
 int val;
 struct semid_ds *buf;
 ushort *array;
}semarg;
```

## **semctl**

### **Return Values**

- >=0** Success. The value returned depends on the command passed in *cmd*. Refer to the list below of possible return values and their meanings.
- 1** An error occurred, and **errno** is set to indicate the error condition.

Upon successful completion, the **semctl()** function returns one of the following values depending on the command passed in *cmd*:

| <b>Command</b> | <b>Return Value</b>                                                                                                                            |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>GETVAL</b>  | The semaphore value of the semaphore specified by <i>semid</i> and <i>semnum</i> .                                                             |
| <b>GETNCNT</b> | The number of processes waiting for the semaphore value of the semaphore specified by <i>semid</i> and <i>semnum</i> to become greater than 0. |
| <b>GETZCNT</b> | The number of processes waiting for the semaphore value of the semaphore specified by <i>semid</i> and <i>semnum</i> to become 0.              |
| <b>GETPID</b>  | The PID of the process that last modified the semaphore specified by <i>semid</i> and <i>semnum</i> .                                          |
| All others     | 0                                                                                                                                              |

### **Description**

The **semctl()** function provides semaphore control operations on the semaphore set and data structure associated with the semaphore identifier passed in *semid*. Control operations are defined by *cmd*. Following are valid commands to be passed in *cmd* and the resulting operations:

| <b>Command</b>  | <b>Operation</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>IPC_RMID</b> | Deallocate the semaphore identifier specified by <i>semid</i> and purge the semaphore set and data structure associated with it. The calling process must have either MPE/iX SM capability or an effective user ID equal to the value of either the <b>sem_perm.uid</b> or <b>sem_perm.cuid</b> fields in the data structure associated with <i>semid</i> . |

## **2-24 SVID IPC Library Function Descriptions**

## **semctl**

|          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IPC_SET  | <p>Copy data from the following fields of the <b>semid_ds</b> structure (defined in the <code>&lt;sys/sem.h&gt;</code> header) pointed to by <i>semarg.buf</i> to the corresponding fields in the data structure associated with <i>semid</i>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ <b>sem_perm.uid</b> (owner user ID)</li><li>■ <b>sem_perm.gid</b> (owner group ID)</li><li>■ Low order 9 bits of <b>sem_perm.mode</b></li></ul> <p>The calling process must have either MPE/iX SM capability or an effective user ID equal to the value of either the <b>sem_perm.uid</b> or <b>sem_perm.cuid</b> fields in the data structure associated with <i>semid</i>.</p> |
| IPC_STAT | <p>Copy all data from the data structure associated with <i>semid</i> to the data structure pointed to by <i>semarg.buf</i>. The structure <b>semid_ds</b> is defined in the <code>&lt;sys/sem.h&gt;</code> header. The calling process must have read permission.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| GETVAL   | <p>Return the semaphore value of the semaphore specified by <i>semid</i> and <i>semnum</i>. The calling process must have read permission.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| SETVAL   | <p>Set the semaphore value of the semaphore specified by <i>semid</i> and <i>semnum</i> to <i>semarg.val</i> (must be <math>\geq 0</math>). This command clears in all processes the semaphore adjust value corresponding to the specified semaphore. The calling process must have write permission.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| GETPID   | <p>Return the PID of the process that last modified the semaphore specified by <i>semid</i> and <i>semnum</i>. The calling process must have read permission.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| GETNCNT  | <p>Return the number of processes waiting for the semaphore value of the semaphore specified by <i>semid</i> and <i>semnum</i> to become greater than zero. The calling process must have read permission.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| GETZCNT  | <p>Return the number of processes waiting for the semaphore value of the semaphore specified by <i>semid</i> and <i>semnum</i> to become 0. The calling process must have read permission.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

## **semctl**

|        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| GETALL | Copy the semaphore values of all semaphores associated with <i>semid</i> to the array pointed to by <i>semarg.array</i> . The calling process must have read permission.                                                                                                                      |
| SETALL | Set the semaphore values of all semaphores to the values specified in the array pointed to by <i>arg.array</i> (must be $\geq 0$ ). This command clears in all processes the semaphore adjust value corresponding to the specified semaphore. The calling process must have write permission. |

## **Implementation Considerations**

None.

## **Errors**

If an error occurs, **errno** is set to one of the following values.

## semctl

|         |        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---------|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| EACCES  | CAUSE  | The calling process does not have permission.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|         | ACTION | Ensure that the process has the required permissions to perform the specified <i>cmd</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| EFAULT  | CAUSE  | The system detected a NULL or bad address in attempting to use either the <i>semarg.buf</i> or <i>semarg.array</i> arguments.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|         | ACTION | Check the <i>semarg</i> parameter and make sure it is properly defined.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| EINVAL  | CAUSE  | <i>semid</i> is not a valid semaphore identifier, or <i>cmd</i> is not a valid command, or <i>semnum</i> is less than zero or greater than or equal to the value stored in the <b>sem_nsems</b> field in the data structure associated with <i>semid</i> , or the values of <b>SETVAL</b> or <b>SETALL</b> are out of range. |
|         | ACTION | Check the parameters to make sure a valid <i>semid</i> was specified and the semaphore set was not removed from the system, a valid <i>cmd</i> was specified, <i>semnum</i> references a semaphore that exists in this semaphore set, or <b>SETVAL</b> and <b>SETALL</b> values are in range.                                |
| EPERM   | CAUSE  | <i>cmd</i> specifies <b>IPC_RMID</b> or <b>IPC_SET</b> and the calling process does not have either MPE/iX SM capability or an effective user ID equal to the value of either the <b>sem_perm.uid</b> or <b>sem_perm.cuid</b> fields in the data structure associated with <i>semid</i> .                                    |
|         | ACTION | Ensure that the calling process has the appropriate effective user ID or the appropriate capabilities to perform the specified <i>cmd</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| ERANGE  | CAUSE  | <i>cmd</i> specifies either <b>SETVAL</b> or <b>SETALL</b> and the resulting semaphore value would be greater than the system-defined limit.                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|         | ACTION | Ensure that the semaphore value(s) specified are within the system-defined range.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ESYSERR | CAUSE  | An operating system error occurred that does not map directly to any of the above errors.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|         | ACTION | Examine the MPE/iX process error stack for the type of system error.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

## See Also

`semget()`, `semop()`, SVID2 (Section 12)

---

## semget

Returns a semaphore identifier.

### Syntax

```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ipc.h>
#include <sys/sem.h>

int semget (key_t key, int nsems, int semflg);
```

### Parameters

|                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                       |                                                                                                                                                       |                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>key</i>             | Either a user-defined key value to rendezvous with the semaphore set, or <code>IPC_PRIVATE</code> . If <code>IPC_PRIVATE</code> is specified, a new semaphore set is created, but other processes cannot rendezvous by <i>key</i> . Refer to the description of <code>ftok()</code> for details about obtaining user-defined key values                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                       |                                                                                                                                                       |                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <i>nsems</i>           | The number of semaphores in the set. The maximum number of semaphores per set is 4096.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                       |                                                                                                                                                       |                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <i>semflg</i>          | Valid flags for this function are:<br><br><table><tr><td><code>IPC_CREAT</code></td><td>If a semaphore set is not already associated with <i>key</i>, a new semaphore identifier is allocated and a semaphore set and data structure are associated with it. If a semaphore identifier is already associated with <i>key</i>, and <code>IPC_EXCL</code> is not specified, <code>semget()</code> returns the semaphore identifier currently associated with <i>key</i>.</td></tr><tr><td><code>IPC_EXCL</code></td><td>If specified with <code>IPC_CREAT</code>, <code>semget()</code> returns an error if a semaphore identifier is currently associated with <i>key</i>.</td></tr><tr><td><code>MODE</code></td><td>The lower nine bits of <i>semflg</i> contain the access permission bits (similar to the nine-bit mask found in file entries). They define the access rights for the owner, the group, and other users on the system.</td></tr></table> | <code>IPC_CREAT</code> | If a semaphore set is not already associated with <i>key</i> , a new semaphore identifier is allocated and a semaphore set and data structure are associated with it. If a semaphore identifier is already associated with <i>key</i> , and <code>IPC_EXCL</code> is not specified, <code>semget()</code> returns the semaphore identifier currently associated with <i>key</i> . | <code>IPC_EXCL</code> | If specified with <code>IPC_CREAT</code> , <code>semget()</code> returns an error if a semaphore identifier is currently associated with <i>key</i> . | <code>MODE</code> | The lower nine bits of <i>semflg</i> contain the access permission bits (similar to the nine-bit mask found in file entries). They define the access rights for the owner, the group, and other users on the system. |
| <code>IPC_CREAT</code> | If a semaphore set is not already associated with <i>key</i> , a new semaphore identifier is allocated and a semaphore set and data structure are associated with it. If a semaphore identifier is already associated with <i>key</i> , and <code>IPC_EXCL</code> is not specified, <code>semget()</code> returns the semaphore identifier currently associated with <i>key</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                       |                                                                                                                                                       |                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <code>IPC_EXCL</code>  | If specified with <code>IPC_CREAT</code> , <code>semget()</code> returns an error if a semaphore identifier is currently associated with <i>key</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                       |                                                                                                                                                       |                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <code>MODE</code>      | The lower nine bits of <i>semflg</i> contain the access permission bits (similar to the nine-bit mask found in file entries). They define the access rights for the owner, the group, and other users on the system.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                       |                                                                                                                                                       |                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

## 2-28 SVID IPC Library Function Descriptions

## Return Values

- `>=0` Success. A semaphore identifier is returned.
- `-1` An error occurred, and `errno` is set to indicate the error condition.

## Description

The `semget()` function returns a semaphore identifier associated with the value passed in *key*. A semaphore identifier and the associated data structure and semaphore set containing *nsems* semaphores are created for *key* if one of the following conditions is true:

- The value passed in *key* is equal to `IPC_PRIVATE`.
- The value passed in *key* does not already have a semaphore identifier associated with it, and the *semflg* specifies `IPC_CREAT`.

The data structure associated with the new semaphore identifier is initialized to the following values:

|                            |                                                                         |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>sem_perm.cuid</code> | Effective user ID of the calling process (creator user ID)              |
| <code>sem_perm.uid</code>  | Effective user ID of the calling process (owner user ID)                |
| <code>sem_perm.cgid</code> | Effective group ID of the calling process (creator group ID)            |
| <code>sem_perm.gid</code>  | Effective group ID of the calling process (owner group ID)              |
| <code>sem_perm.mode</code> | Low-order 9 bits are set equal to the low-order 9 bits of <i>semflg</i> |
| <code>sem_nsems</code>     | The value of <i>nsems</i>                                               |
| <code>sem_otime</code>     | 0                                                                       |
| <code>sem_ctime</code>     | Current time                                                            |

## Implementation Considerations

The maximum number of semaphores per set is 4096.

An MPE/iX system manager can use the MPE/iX SVIPC utility to interactively configure:

- The maximum number of semaphores in a semaphore set
- The maximum value for a semaphore
- The maximum semaphore operation value
- The maximum semaphore adjust value

## semget

- The maximum number of semaphore sets allowed system wide
- The maximum number of semaphore operations allowed per `semop()` call

Refer to the section “Managing SVID IPC Services” for more information.

## Errors

If an error occurs, `errno` is set to one of the following values.

|        |        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| EACCES | CAUSE  | A semaphore identifier exists for <i>key</i> and the calling process does not have permission (specified by the low-order 9 bits of <i>semflg</i> ).                                                                                     |
|        | ACTION | Ensure the calling process has access permissions required to access the existing semaphore identifier.                                                                                                                                  |
| EEXIST | CAUSE  | A semaphore identifier exists for <i>key</i> and <i>semflg</i> specifies both <code>IPC_CREAT</code> and <code>IPC_EXCL</code> .                                                                                                         |
|        | ACTION | To access the existing identifier for <i>key</i> , retry the operation without the <code>IPC_EXCL</code> option. To create a new semaphore set with <code>IPC_EXCL</code> , a unique key must be specified.                              |
| EINVAL | CAUSE  | <i>nsems</i> is either less 1 or greater than the system-defined limit, or a semaphore identifier exists for <i>key</i> and the number of semaphores in the set is less than <i>nsems</i> and <i>nsems</i> is not equal to 0.            |
|        | ACTION | If accessing an existing semaphore set, make sure the <i>nsems</i> value does not exceed the number of semaphores in the existing set. If creating a new semaphore set, make sure <i>nsems</i> does not exceed the system-defined limit. |
| ENOENT | CAUSE  | A semaphore identifier does not exist for <i>key</i> and <i>semflg</i> does not specify <code>IPC_CREAT</code> .                                                                                                                         |
|        | ACTION | If attempting to access an existing semaphore set, make sure the right <i>key</i> value was specified. If a new semaphore set should be created for that <i>key</i> if none exists, then make sure <code>IPC_CREAT</code> is specified.  |
| ENOSPC | CAUSE  | The number of semaphore identifiers would exceed the system-defined limit.                                                                                                                                                               |
|        | ACTION | None. The operation can be retried if another semaphore identifier is removed from the system.                                                                                                                                           |

## 2-30 SVID IPC Library Function Descriptions



## **semget**

|                |               |                                                                                           |
|----------------|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>ESYSERR</b> | <b>CAUSE</b>  | An operating system error occurred that does not map directly to any of the above errors. |
|                | <b>ACTION</b> | Examine the MPE/iX process error stack for the type of system error.                      |

### **See Also**

`semctl()`, `semop()`, SVID2 (Section 12)

---

## semop

Performs operations on a set of semaphores.

### Syntax

```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ipc.h>
#include <sys/sem.h>

int semop (int semid, struct sembuf *sops, int nsops);
```

### Parameters

|              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>semid</i> | Passes a semaphore identifier returned by a <code>semget()</code> call.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <i>sops</i>  | Passes a pointer to an array of semaphore operation structures where each element is of type <code>struct sembuf</code> (defined in the <code>&lt;sys/sem.h&gt;</code> header). Semaphore operation structures define operations to perform on the semaphore set. For details on using semaphore operation structures, refer to the “Description” section below. |
| <i>nsops</i> | Passes the number of valid semaphore operation structures in the array pointed to by <i>sops</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

### Return Values

|    |                                                                                   |
|----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0  | Success.                                                                          |
| -1 | An error occurred, and <code>errno</code> is set to indicate the error condition. |

### Description

The `semop()` function performs operations on the set of semaphores associated with the semaphore identifier specified by *semid*.

The *sops* argument points to an array where each of *nsops* elements contains a semaphore operation structure. Each semaphore operation specified by the `sem_op` field is performed on the semaphore specified by `sem_num`. The

## 2-32 SVID IPC Library Function Descriptions

## semop

operation is further defined by the `sem_flg` field. No semaphore operations are performed until blocking conditions on all of the semaphores specified in the array are removed.

If the value of `sem_op` is less than 0 and the calling process has write permission, one of the following operations occurs depending upon the current semaphore value and the value of `sem_flg`:

### Operations when `sem_op < 0`

| Semaphore Value                              | sem_flg Value                         | Operation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| $\geq$ absolute value of <code>sem_op</code> | 0 or <code>IPC_NOWAIT</code>          | A new semaphore value is calculated as the result of subtracting the absolute value of <code>sem_op</code> from the current semaphore value. The call to <code>semop()</code> returns successfully to the calling process.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| $\geq$ absolute value of <code>sem_op</code> | <code>SEM_UNDO</code>                 | A new semaphore value is calculated as the result of subtracting the absolute value of <code>sem_op</code> from the current semaphore value. The absolute value of <code>sem_op</code> is added to the calling process's semaphore adjust value of the specified semaphore. The call to <code>semop()</code> returns successfully to the calling process.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| $<$ absolute value of <code>sem_op</code>    | <code>IPC_NOWAIT</code>               | <code>semop()</code> returns -1, sets <code>errno</code> to <code>EAGAIN</code> , and returns control to the calling process.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| $<$ absolute value of <code>sem_op</code>    | <code>IPC_NOWAIT</code> not specified | The <code>semncnt</code> field is incremented, indicating the number of processes waiting for the semaphore value of the specified semaphore to become greater than zero. Process execution is suspended until one of the following conditions occurs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ The semaphore value becomes greater than or equal to the absolute value of <code>sem_op</code>. When this occurs, the <code>semncnt</code> field is decremented by 1 and execution continues as described above when semaphore value <math>\geq</math> absolute value of <code>sem_op</code>.</li><li>■ The semaphore identifier is removed from the system. <code>semop()</code> returns with a value of -1 and <code>errno</code> is set to <code>EIDRM</code>.</li><li>■ A signal is caught by the suspended process. When this occurs, the <code>semncnt</code> field is decremented by 1 and the calling process resumes execution in the manner defined by the signal facility.</li></ul> |

## semop

If the value of `sem_op` is equal to 0 and the calling process has read permission, one of the following operations occurs depending upon the current semaphore value and the value of `sem_flag`:

### Operations when `sem_op=0`

| Semaphore Value | sem_flag Value | Operation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0               | Any value      | <code>semop()</code> executes the next semaphore operation in the array pointed to by <code>semops</code> , or returns successfully to the calling process if there are no more valid semaphore operations.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <>0             | IPC_NOWAIT     | <code>semop()</code> returns -1, sets <code>errno</code> to <code>EAGAIN</code> , and returns control to the calling process.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <>0             | 0 or SEM_UNDO  | <p>The <code>semzcnt</code> field is incremented, indicating the number of processes waiting for the semaphore value of the specified semaphore to become zero. Process execution is suspended until one of the following conditions occurs:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ The semaphore value becomes zero. When this occurs, the <code>semzcnt</code> field is decremented by 1 and execution continues as described above when semaphore value = 0.</li><li>■ The specified semaphore identifier is removed from the system. <code>semop()</code> returns with a value of -1 and <code>errno</code> is set to <code>EIDRM</code>.</li><li>■ A signal is caught by the suspended process. When this occurs, the <code>semzcnt</code> field is decremented by 1 and the calling process resumes execution in the manner defined by the signal facility.</li></ul> |

## **semop**

If the value of **sem\_op** is greater than 0 and the calling process has write permission, one of the following operations occurs depending upon the current semaphore value and the value of **sem\_flag**.

### **Operations when $\text{sem\_op} > 0$**

| Semaphore Value | sem_flag Value                | Operation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Any value       | <b>SEM_UNDO</b> not specified | A new semaphore value is calculated as the result of adding the value of <b>sem_op</b> to the current semaphore value of the specified semaphore. The call to <b>semop()</b> returns successfully to the calling process.                                                                                                                        |
| Any value       | <b>SEM_UNDO</b>               | A new semaphore value is calculated as the result of adding the value of <b>sem_op</b> to the current semaphore value of the specified semaphore. The value of <b>sem_op</b> is subtracted from the calling process's semaphore adjust value of the specified semaphore. The call to <b>semop()</b> returns successfully to the calling process. |

If **semop()** is successful, the value of **sempid** for each semaphore specified in the array pointed to by *sops* is set equal to the PID of the calling process. The value of **sem\_otime** in the data structure associated with the semaphore identifier is set to the current time.

### **Implementation Considerations**

If a process suspended during execution of **semop()** receives a signal, control returns to the user with **errno** set to **EINTR**. Disabled signals are ignored.

The maximum number of semaphore **UNDO** entries per process is 64. Semaphore adjust values can be maintained for up to 64 distinct semaphores (elements of semaphore sets).

**semop**

An MPE/iX system manager can use the MPE/iX SVIPC utility to interactively configure:

- the maximum semaphore value
- the maximum semaphore adjust value
- the maximum `nsops` value
- The maximum `sem_op` value

Refer to the section “Managing SVID IPC Services” for more information.

**Errors**

If an error occurs, `errno` is set to one of the following values.

|        |        |                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| E2BIG  | CAUSE  | <i>nsops</i> specifies a value greater than the system-defined limit.                                                                            |
|        | ACTION | Check the <i>nsops</i> value and make sure it is within the system-defined range.                                                                |
| EACCES | CAUSE  | The calling process does not have permission.                                                                                                    |
|        | ACTION | Ensure the process has write permission (to modify a semaphore value) or read permission (to test a semaphore for 0).                            |
| EAGAIN | CAUSE  | <i>sem_flg</i> specifies <code>IPC_NOWAIT</code> and the calling process would suspend on the specified operation.                               |
|        | ACTION | None. Application dependent.                                                                                                                     |
| EFAULT | CAUSE  | The system detected a NULL or bad address in attempting to use the <i>sops</i> argument.                                                         |
|        | ACTION | Check to see that the <i>sops</i> argument has been properly defined.                                                                            |
| EFBIG  | CAUSE  | <i>sem_num</i> is either less than zero or greater than or equal to the number of semaphores in the semaphore set associated with <i>semid</i> . |
|        | ACTION | Check the <i>sem_num</i> value to make sure it specifies a valid semaphore in the semaphore set identified by <i>semid</i> .                     |

## semop

|         |        |                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| EIDRM   | CAUSE  | The semaphore set specified by <i>semid</i> was removed while <b>semop()</b> was suspended on a semaphore operation.                                                                |
|         | ACTION | None.                                                                                                                                                                               |
| EINTR   | CAUSE  | <b>semget()</b> was interrupted by a signal.                                                                                                                                        |
|         | ACTION | None. Application dependent.                                                                                                                                                        |
| EINVAL  | CAUSE  | <i>semid</i> is not a valid semaphore identifier, or the calling process requested a <b>SEM_UNDO</b> for a number of semaphores that would exceed the system-defined limit.         |
|         | ACTION | Check that <i>semid</i> specifies a valid semaphore identifier and that it has not been removed from the system.                                                                    |
| ENOSPC  | CAUSE  | The number of maximum undo entries (64) for this process would exceed the system-defined limit.                                                                                     |
|         | ACTION | None. There were no undo table entries available to record the <b>SEM_UNDO</b> information. Examine the application to see if <b>SEM_UNDO</b> is required for that many semaphores. |
| ERANGE  | CAUSE  | The resulting semaphore value or semaphore adjust value would exceed the system-defined limit.                                                                                      |
|         | ACTION | None. Application dependent.                                                                                                                                                        |
| ESYSERR | CAUSE  | An operating system error occurred that does not map directly to any of the above errors.                                                                                           |
|         | ACTION | Examine the MPE/iX process error stack for the type of system error.                                                                                                                |

## See Also

**semctl()**, **semget()**, SVID2 (Section 12)

---

## shmat

Attaches the calling process to a shared memory area.

### Syntax

```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ipc.h>
#include <sys/shm.h>

char *shmat (int shmid, char *shmaddr, int shmflg);
```

### Parameters

|                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>shmid</i>   | Passes a shared memory identifier returned by a <b>shmget()</b> call.                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <i>shmaddr</i> | Passes either 0 or a valid memory address. Set <i>shmaddr</i> to zero to attach a shared memory area to the address space of the calling process. Otherwise, set <i>shmaddr</i> to the data start address of a shared memory area that is already attached to another process. |
| <i>shmflg</i>  | Passes a value specifying that the calling process has read/write access to the attached shared memory area. It is not possible to attach for write-only access or read-only access.                                                                                           |

### Return Values

|             |                                                                                                 |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>addr</i> | Success. <b>shmat()</b> returns the data area start address of the attached shared memory area. |
| -1          | An error occurred, and <b>errno</b> is set to indicate the error condition.                     |

### Description

The **shmat()** function attaches the shared memory area associated with the shared memory identifier specified by *shmid* to the data area of the calling process.

If the shared memory area is already attached to another process, a non-zero value of *shmaddr* is accepted, provided the specified address is identical to the

## 2-38 SVID IPC Library Function Descriptions



current attach address of the area. The area is attached for both reading and writing.

### **Implementation Considerations**

The MPE/iX implementation of SVID IPC shared memory emulates the equivalent functionality on a Series 800 HP9000 computer system. A process cannot attach to the same *shmid* multiple times. The address must be the same in all processes. Specifying a different address results in an error.

When attaching to a shared memory area for the first time, *shmaddr* must be set to zero.

The **SHM\_RND** and **SHMLBA** flags are not supported. Specifying **SHM\_RND** results in an error, and **errno** is set to **EACCES**.

The maximum number of shared memory areas a process can attach to is 256.

When **fork()** is called, the child process inherits all shared memory areas to which the parent process is attached. When **exec()** is called, the shared memory attached to the calling process is not attached to the new process.

## shmat

### Errors

If an error occurs, **errno** is set to one of the following values.

|         |        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| EACCES  | CAUSE  | The calling process does not have permission, or <b>SHM_RND</b> was specified.                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|         | ACTION | Ensure that the calling process has permission to access the area as requested, or do not specify the <b>SHM_RND</b> and <b>SHMLBA</b> flags.                                                                                                                        |
| EINVAL  | CAUSE  | <i>shmid</i> is not a valid shared memory identifier, or <i>shmall</i> is not zero and not equal to the current attach location for the shared memory area, or the calling process is already attached to the shared memory area.                                    |
|         | ACTION | Check that <i>shmid</i> is valid and has not been removed from the system. If there is no current attach location for the shared memory area, make sure <i>shmall</i> is zero. A process cannot attach more than once (concurrently) to the same shared memory area. |
| EMFILE  | CAUSE  | The number of shared memory areas attached to the calling process would exceed the system-defined limit.                                                                                                                                                             |
|         | ACTION | None. The operation can be retried if the process detaches from another shared memory area to which it is currently attached.                                                                                                                                        |
| ENOMEM  | CAUSE  | The available data space is not large enough to accommodate the shared memory area.                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|         | ACTION | None. The operation can be retried later.                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ESYSERR | CAUSE  | An operating system error occurred that does not map directly to any of the above errors.                                                                                                                                                                            |
|         | ACTION | Examine the MPE/iX process error stack for the type of system error.                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

### See Also

shmctl(), shmdt(), shmget(), SVID2 (Section 12)

## shmctl

Performs control operations on a shared memory area.

### Syntax

```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ipc.h>
#include <sys/shm.h>

int shmctl (int shmid, int cmd, struct shm_id_ds *buffer);
```

### Parameters

*shmid* Passes a shared memory identifier returned by a call to `shmget()`.

*cmd* Passes a command defining the control operation to perform. Valid control codes are defined in the “Description” section below.

*buffer* Passes a pointer to a buffer of type `struct shm_id_ds` (defined in the `<sys/shm.h>` header). Operations on the buffer are defined by *cmd*. Refer to the “Description” section below.

### Return Values

0 Success.

-1 An error occurred, and `errno` is set to indicate the error condition.

### Description

The `shmctl()` function performs control operations on *shmid* and its associated shared memory area and data structure. Control operations are defined by the *cmd* parameter. Following are valid commands to be passed in *cmd*:

**IPC\_RMID** Deallocate the shared memory identifier specified by *shmid* and purge the shared memory area and data structure associated with it. If the shared memory area is attached to one or more processes the shared memory area *key* is changed to `IPC_PRIVATE` and the

## shmctl

area is marked removed. The area is purged only when the last attached process detaches from it.

The calling process must have either MPE/iX SM capability or be the owner or creator of the shared memory area (have an effective user ID equal to the value of either the `shm_perm.uid` (owner) or `shm_perm.cuid` (creator) fields in the data structure associated with *shmid*).

**IPC\_SET** Copy data from the following fields of the `shmid_ds` structure pointed to by *buffer* to the corresponding fields in the data structure associated with *shmid*:

- `shm_perm.uid` (owner user ID)
- `shm_perm.gid` (owner group ID)
- Low order 9 bits of `shm_perm.mode`

The calling process must have either MPE/iX SM capability or an effective user ID equal to the value of either the `shm_perm.uid` or `shm_perm.cuid` fields in data structure associated with *shmid*.

**IPC\_STAT** Copy all data from the structure associated with *shmid* to the data structure pointed to by *buffer*.

## Implementation Considerations

The `SHM_LOCK` and `SHM_UNLOCK` options of *cmd* are not implemented. A call to `shmctl()` with *cmd* set to either `SHM_LOCK` or `SHM_UNLOCK` results in an error.

## Errors

If an error occurs, `errno` is set to one of the following values.

## shmctl

|         |        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---------|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| EACCES  | CAUSE  | <i>cmd</i> is set to <b>IPC_STAT</b> and the calling process does not have read permission.                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|         | ACTION | Ensure that the calling process has read permission to the shared memory area.                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| EFAULT  | CAUSE  | The system detected a NULL or bad address in attempting to use the <i>buffer</i> argument.                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|         | ACTION | Check to see if the pointer is properly initialized.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| EINVAL  | CAUSE  | <i>shmid</i> is not a valid shared memory identifier, or <i>cmd</i> is not a valid command, or <i>cmd</i> specifies <b>SHM_UNLOCK</b> or <b>SHM_LOCK</b> .                                                                                                                                                  |
|         | ACTION | Check that <i>shmid</i> is valid and that the identifier has not been removed from the system, and check that <i>cmd</i> specifies a valid, supported command.                                                                                                                                              |
| ENOMEM  | CAUSE  | <i>cmd</i> specifies <b>SHM_LOCK</b> or the available data space is not large enough to accommodate the shared memory area.                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|         | ACTION | None.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| EPERM   | CAUSE  | <i>cmd</i> specifies <b>IPC_RMID</b> or <b>IPC_SET</b> and the calling process does not have either MPE/iX SM capability or an effective user ID equal to the value of either the <b>shm_perm.uid</b> (owner) or <b>shm_perm.cuid</b> (creator) fields in the data structure associated with <i>shmid</i> . |
|         | ACTION | Ensure that the calling process has the appropriate effective user ID or the appropriate capabilities to perform the specified <i>cmd</i> .                                                                                                                                                                 |
| ESYSERR | CAUSE  | An operating system error occurred that does not map directly to any of the above errors.                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|         | ACTION | Examine the MPE/iX process error stack for the type of system error.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

## See Also

shmat(), shmdt(), shmget(), SVID2 (Section 12)

---

## shmdt

Detaches a process from a shared memory area.

### Syntax

```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ipc.h>
#include <sys/shm.h>

int shmdt (char *shmaddr);
```

### Parameters

*shmaddr* Passes the address of the shared memory area (returned from a call to `shmat()`).

### Return Values

0 Success.

-1 An error occurred, and `errno` is set to indicate the error condition.

### Description

The `shmdt()` function detaches a shared memory area from the calling process's data area. The address of the shared memory area is specified by *shmaddr* (returned from a call to `shmat()`).

### Implementation Considerations

None.

Errors

If an error occurs, `errno` is set to one of the following values.

|         |        |                                                                                                          |
|---------|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| EINVAL  | CAUSE  | <i>shmaddr</i> is not the data area start address of a shared memory area.                               |
|         | ACTION | Check to see that <i>shmaddr</i> is equal to the value returned by a previous <code>shmat()</code> call. |
| ESYSERR | CAUSE  | An operating system error occurred that does not map directly to any of the above errors.                |
|         | ACTION | Examine the MPE/iX process error stack for the type of system error.                                     |

See Also

`shmat()`, `shmctl()`, `shmget()`, SVID2 (Section 12)

---

## shmget

Returns a shared memory identifier.

### Syntax

```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ipc.h>
#include <sys/shm.h>
```

```
int shmget (key_t key, int size, int shmflg);
```

### Parameters

|                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                       |                                                                                                                                                         |                   |                                                                                                  |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>key</i>             | Passes either a user-defined key value to rendezvous with the shared memory area, or <code>IPC_PRIVATE</code> . If <code>IPC_PRIVATE</code> is specified, a new shared memory area is created, but other processes cannot rendezvous by <i>key</i> . Refer to the description of <code>ftok()</code> for details about obtaining user-defined key values                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                       |                                                                                                                                                         |                   |                                                                                                  |
| <i>size</i>            | Passes the size, in bytes, of the shared memory area. The maximum shared memory area size is 256 megabytes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                       |                                                                                                                                                         |                   |                                                                                                  |
| <i>shmflg</i>          | Valid flags for this function are: <table><tr><td><code>IPC_CREAT</code></td><td>If a shared memory area is not already associated with <i>key</i>, a new shared memory area identifier is allocated and a shared memory area and data structure are associated with it. If a shared memory area is already associated with <i>key</i>, <code>shmctl()</code> returns the shared memory identifier associated with <i>key</i>.</td></tr><tr><td><code>IPC_EXCL</code></td><td>If specified with <code>IPC_CREAT</code>, <code>shmget()</code> returns an error if a shared memory identifier is already associated with <i>key</i>.</td></tr><tr><td><code>MODE</code></td><td>The lower nine bits of <i>shmflg</i> contain the access permission bits (similar to the nine bit</td></tr></table> | <code>IPC_CREAT</code> | If a shared memory area is not already associated with <i>key</i> , a new shared memory area identifier is allocated and a shared memory area and data structure are associated with it. If a shared memory area is already associated with <i>key</i> , <code>shmctl()</code> returns the shared memory identifier associated with <i>key</i> . | <code>IPC_EXCL</code> | If specified with <code>IPC_CREAT</code> , <code>shmget()</code> returns an error if a shared memory identifier is already associated with <i>key</i> . | <code>MODE</code> | The lower nine bits of <i>shmflg</i> contain the access permission bits (similar to the nine bit |
| <code>IPC_CREAT</code> | If a shared memory area is not already associated with <i>key</i> , a new shared memory area identifier is allocated and a shared memory area and data structure are associated with it. If a shared memory area is already associated with <i>key</i> , <code>shmctl()</code> returns the shared memory identifier associated with <i>key</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                       |                                                                                                                                                         |                   |                                                                                                  |
| <code>IPC_EXCL</code>  | If specified with <code>IPC_CREAT</code> , <code>shmget()</code> returns an error if a shared memory identifier is already associated with <i>key</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                       |                                                                                                                                                         |                   |                                                                                                  |
| <code>MODE</code>      | The lower nine bits of <i>shmflg</i> contain the access permission bits (similar to the nine bit                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                       |                                                                                                                                                         |                   |                                                                                                  |

## 2-46 SVID IPC Library Function Descriptions



## shmget

mask found in file entries). They define access permissions for the owner, the group, and other users on the system.

|                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SHM_NO_PID      | Allocate a shared memory area without PID protection. (Refer to “Implementation Considerations” for more information about using this flag.)                                                         |
| SHM_PRIV_ACCESS | Allocate a shared memory area accessible only to a calling process that has MPE/iX user privileged mode (PM). (Refer to “Implementation Considerations” for more information about using this flag.) |

### Return Values

|          |                                                                             |
|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| $\geq 0$ | Success. A shared memory area identifier is returned.                       |
| -1       | An error occurred, and <b>errno</b> is set to indicate the error condition. |

### Description

The **shmget()** function returns a shared memory identifier associated with the value passed in *key*. A new shared memory identifier is allocated and an associated data structure and shared memory area of *size* bytes are associated with it if:

- The value passed in *key* is equal to **IPC\_PRIVATE**.
- The value passed in *key* does not already have a shared memory identifier associated with it, and *shmflg* specifies **IPC\_CREAT**.

The data structure associated with the new shared memory identifier is initialized to the following values:

|                      |                                                                         |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>shm_perm.cuid</b> | Effective user ID of the calling process (creator user ID)              |
| <b>shm_perm.uid</b>  | Effective user ID of the calling process (owner user ID)                |
| <b>shm_perm.cgid</b> | Effective group ID of the calling process (creator group ID)            |
| <b>shm_perm.gid</b>  | Effective group ID of the calling process (owner group ID)              |
| <b>shm_perm.mode</b> | Low-order 9 bits are set equal to the low-order 9 bits of <i>shmflg</i> |

## shmget

|            |                             |
|------------|-----------------------------|
| shm_segsz  | Value passed in <i>size</i> |
| msg_qnum   | Zero                        |
| shm_lpid   | Zero                        |
| shm_nattch | Zero                        |
| shm_atime  | Zero                        |
| shm_dtime  | Zero                        |
| shm_ctime  | Current time                |

## Implementation Considerations

The maximum shared memory area size is 256 megabytes.

On MPE/iX, two flags, `SHM_NO_PID` and `SHM_PRIV_ACCESS` are available to the `shmget()` function that are not defined by SVID. (Refer to the description of *shmflg* above.)

---

### Note

The `SHM_NO_PID` and `SHM_PRIV_ACCESS` flags are available only on 900 Series HP 3000 computer systems. These two flags are not recommended for portable applications. Specifying these flags on a different computer system may produce unpredictable results. In addition, setting `SHM_NO_PID` increases the risk of data corruption, since the shared memory area will not be protected by normal MPE/iX data memory protection traps.

---

An MPE/iX system manager can use the MPE/iX `SVIPC` utility to interactively configure:

- The minimum and maximum size of the shared memory area
- The total number of shared memory areas allowed system wide.

Refer to the section “Managing SVID IPC Services” for more information.

## Errors

If an error occurs, `errno` is set to one of the following values:

## 2-48 SVID IPC Library Function Descriptions

## shmget

|         |        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| EACCES  | CAUSE  | A shared memory identifier exists for <i>key</i> but the calling process does not have permission (as specified by the low-order 9 bits of <i>shmflg</i> ).                                                                                                                         |
|         | ACTION | Ensure that the calling process has appropriate permissions to obtain access to the existing shared memory identifier.                                                                                                                                                              |
| EEXIST  | CAUSE  | A shared memory identifier exists for <i>key</i> and <i>shmflg</i> specifies both <code>IPC_CREATE</code> and <code>IPC_EXCL</code> .                                                                                                                                               |
|         | ACTION | To access the existing shared memory identifier, remove the <code>IPC_EXCL</code> option. Otherwise, a unique <i>key</i> value must be specified for a new shared memory identifier to be created.                                                                                  |
| EINVAL  | CAUSE  | <i>size</i> is either less than the system-defined minimum or greater than the system-defined maximum, or a shared memory identifier exists for <i>key</i> and the size of the shared memory area associated with it is less than <i>size</i> and <i>size</i> is not equal to zero. |
|         | ACTION | Check to see that <i>size</i> is within the system-defined valid range, and that if a shared memory identifier already exists for <i>key</i> , that <i>size</i> is within that shared memory area's valid range.                                                                    |
| ENOENT  | CAUSE  | A shared memory identifier does not exist for <i>key</i> and <i>shmflg</i> does not specify <code>IPC_CREATE</code> .                                                                                                                                                               |
|         | ACTION | To create a shared memory area for <i>key</i> when one does not already exist, make sure <code>IPC_CREAT</code> is specified.                                                                                                                                                       |
| ENOMEM  | CAUSE  | The available data space is not large enough to create a shared memory identifier and associated shared memory area.                                                                                                                                                                |
|         | ACTION | None. The operation can be retried if another shared memory identifier is removed from the system.                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| ENOSPC  | CAUSE  | The number of shared memory identifiers would exceed the system-defined limit.                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|         | ACTION | None. The operation can be retried if another shared memory identifier is removed from the system.                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| ESYSERR | CAUSE  | An operating system error occurred that does not map directly to any of the above errors.                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|         | ACTION | Examine the MPE/iX process error stack for the type of system error.                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

## See Also

shmat(), shmctl(), shmdt(), SVID2 (Section 12)

---

## SVID IPC Header Descriptions

Headers required by SVID IPC provide MACRO, type, and structure definitions, as well as function prototypes. SVID IPC headers are located under the *to be provided* directory. In addition, the `<sys/types.h>` header, described in the *MPE/iX Developer's Kit Reference Manual* (36430-90001), defines additional features required by SVID IPC.

The following headers are required by SVID IPC:

- `<sys/types.h>`
- `<sys/ipc.h>`
- `<sys/msg.h>`
- `<sys/shm.h>`
- `<sys/sem.h>`

Headers required by each SVID IPC function are specified in the “Syntax” section of each function description. You must specify the headers in the indicated order. The following sections provide detailed descriptions of the SVID IPC headers.

---

**sys/ipc.h****Macros**

|                      |                                   |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| IPC_CREAT            | Create entry if key doesn't exist |
| IPC_EXCL             | Fail if key exists                |
| IPC_NOWAIT           | Error if request must wait        |
| IPC_PRIVATE (key_t)0 | Private key value                 |
| IPC_RMID             | Remove identifier                 |
| IPC_SET              | Set options                       |
| IPC_STAT             | Get options                       |

**Functions**

If `__STDC__` is defined:

```
extern int svipc_info(int, void *, void *);
extern int svipc_control(int, void *, void *);
```

If `__STDC__` is not defined:

```
extern int svipc_info();
extern int svipc_control();
```

**Types**

```
typedef long key_t;
```

## **sys/ipc.h**

### **Structures**

Common IPC access structure:

```
struct ipc_perm {

 uid_t uid; /* owner's user id */
 gid_t gid; /* owner's group id */
 uid_t cuid; /* creator's user id */
 gid_t cgid; /* creator's group id */
 long mode; /* access modes */
 long seq; /* slot usage sequence number*/
 key_t key; /* key */

};
```

---

## sys/msg.h

### Macros

|             |                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| MSG_NOERROR | No error if big message          |
| MSG_WAIT    | A writer is waiting on the queue |
| MSG_RWAIT   | A reader is waiting on the queue |

### Functions

If `__STDC__` is defined:

```
extern int msgget(key_t, int);
extern int msgctl(int, int, struct msqid_ds *);
extern int msgrcv(int, void *, int, long, int);
extern int msgsnd(int, void *, int, int);
```

If `__STDC__` is not defined:

```
extern int msgget();
extern int msgctl();
extern int msgrcv();
extern int msgsnd();
```

### Structures

Message queue control structure:

```
struct msqid_ds {

 struct ipc_perm msg_perm; /* msg_perm defined in sys/ipc.h */
 void *msg_first; /* not used on MPE/iX */
 void *msg_last; /* not used on MPE/iX */
 int msg_cbytes; /* current # bytes on queue */
 int msg_qnum; /* # of messages on queue */
 int msg_qbytes; /* max # of bytes on queue */
 pid_t msg_lspid; /* pid of last msgsnd */
 pid_t msg_lrpid; /* pid of last msgrcv */
 time_t msg_stime; /* last msgsnd time */
};
```

## **sys/msg.h**

```
time_t msg_rtime; /* last msgrcv time */
time_t msg_ctime; /* last change time */
```

```
};
```

Message buffer template structure:

```
struct msgbuf { /*This is a sample template only */

 long mtype; /* message type */
 char mtext[1]; /* message text */

};
```



---

**sys/sem.h****Macros**

|          |                             |
|----------|-----------------------------|
| SEM_UNDO | Set up adjust on exit entry |
| GETNCNT  | Get semncnt                 |
| GETPID   | Get sempid                  |
| GETVAL   | Get semval                  |
| GETALL   | Get all semvals             |
| GETZCNT  | Get semzcnt                 |
| SETVAL   | Set semval                  |
| SETALL   | Set all semvals             |

**Functions**

If `__STDC__` is defined:

```
extern int semctl(int, int, int, union semun);
extern int semget(key_t, int, int);
extern int semop (int, struct sembuf *, unsigned int);
```

If `__STDC__` is not defined:

```
extern int semctl();
extern int semget();
extern int semop ();
```

**Structures**

Semaphore set id data structure:

```
struct semid_ds {

 struct ipc_perm sem_perm; /* operation permission struct */
 void *sem_base; /* not used on MPE/iX */
 int sem_nsems; /* # of semaphores in set */
 time_t sem_otime; /* last semop time */
 time_t sem_ctime; /* last change time */
};
```

## **sys/sem.h**

```
};
```

Semaphore semop array element template structure:

```
struct sembuf {
```

```
 int sem_num; /* semaphore # */
```

```
 int sem_op; /* semaphore operation */
```

```
 long sem_flg; /* operation flags */
```

```
};
```

---

**sys/shm.h****Macros**

|                 |                                          |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------|
| SHM_NO_PID      | No pid protection - MPE/iX only          |
| SHM_PRIV_ACCESS | Privileged area - MPE/iX only            |
| SHM_RDONLY      | Read access only                         |
| SHM_RND         | Round attach address (not implemented)   |
| SHM_DEST        | Delete when attach = 0 (not implemented) |
| SHM_CLEAR       | Clear on first attach (not implemented)  |
| SHM_LOCK        | Not implemented                          |
| SHM_UNLOCK      | Not implemented                          |

**Functions**

If `__STDC__` is defined:

```
extern char *shmat(int, char *m, int);
extern int shmctl(int, int, struct shmid_ds *);
extern int shmdt (char *);
extern int shmget(key_t, int, int);
```

If `__STDC__` is not defined:

```
extern char *shmat();
extern int shmctl();
extern int shmdt ();
extern int shmget();
```

**Structures**

Shared memory ID control structure:

```
struct shmid_ds {

 struct ipc_perm shm_perm; /* permission structure */
 int shm_segsz; /* segment size */
 void *shm_ptbl; /* not used on MPE/iX */
 pid_t shm_lpid; /* pid of last shmop call */
};
```

## **sys/shm.h**

```
pid_t shm_cpid; /* pid of last change */
int shm_nattch; /* attached users */
int shm_cnattch; /* in memory attached users ?? */
time_t shm_atime; /* last shmat time */
time_t shm_dtime; /* last shmdt time */
time_t shm_ctime; /* last change time */

void *shm_ptr; /* pointer to the shm area. */
};
```

## TERMINFO Database

---

### Introduction

The **TERMINFO** database describes terminal and printer capabilities. A wide range of capabilities can be defined that include, for example, the number of lines and columns for the device, whether or not the terminal wraps at the right margin, or what character sequence causes a carriage return. The database is used by screen-oriented programs such as **VI** or **CURSES** programs. By using **TERMINFO** to handle the capabilities of individual devices, a program can work with a variety of devices without any changes to the code.

The **TERMINFO** descriptions are located in the directory pointed to by the environment variable **TERMINFO**. The default directory is **/usr/lib/terminfo**.

---

### Note

There are several hundred terminal descriptions in the **TERMINFO** database. Hewlett-Packard only explicitly supports the following two terminal descriptions:

- **hp2392a**
- **ansi**

The majority of terminals used by Hewlett-Packard customers are compatible with one of these two descriptions. The other descriptions are available for you to use, but they are not supported.

---

---

## TERMINFO Source File

One or more devices are described in a **TERMINFO** source file. This section describes the contents of the source file.

### Syntax of Device Descriptions

Each device entry in the **TERMINFO** source file has the following format:

```
alias1 | alias2 | ... | aliasn | fullname,
 capability1, capability2,
 .
 .
 .
 capabilityn,
```

The first line in the device description is called the header; it must start in column one of the file. The header contains the commonly-used aliases for the device being described and the full name, which by convention appears last on the line. The environmental variable **TERM** can be set to any one of the terminal aliases. Each name is separated by a vertical bar, (|). The aliases must be unique in the database. They must follow normal MPE/iX HFS naming conventions (avoid a hyphen in the alias name as it is used to append a suffix as described below). All lines in the file must end with a comma (,).

A sample header of the model 33 teletype follows:

```
33|tty33|tty|model 33 teletype
```

A special convention exists for naming terminals that have special hardware modes or user preferences (for example, a VT-100 with 132 columns). Attach a suffix to the alias name with a hyphen, as shown in the following example.

```
vt100-w|vt100 132 column,
```

More than one suffix can be used by concatenating them together. When using multiple suffixes, repeat the alias with the suffixes in the opposite order so the user does not have to remember which is the correct order. The following example shows a terminal in wide mode with no automatic margins:

```
vt100-w-nam|vt100-nam-w|vt100 132 column,
```

The suffix conventions used are shown in Table 3-1.

### 3-2 TERMINFO Database

**Table 3-1. Suffixes for Mode and User Preferences**

| Suffix | Meaning                             |
|--------|-------------------------------------|
| -am    | Auto margins (usually the default)  |
| -na    | No arrow keys (leave in local mode) |
| -nam   | No auto margins                     |
| -w     | Wide mode (more than 80 columns)    |
| -rv    | Reverse video                       |
| -n     | Number of lines on the screen       |
| -np    | Number of pages of memory           |

After the header come the descriptions of the capabilities, separated by commas (white space after the comma is ignored). Each line after the header is indented one or more spaces or tabs. An example that shows the syntax of the capabilities segment of the file follows:

```
dumb|Dumb terminal,
am, xon,
cols#80, it#8,
bel=^G, cr=\r, cudl=\n, ind=\n$<15>,
```

There are three types of capabilities: Boolean, numeric, and string. The first line in the example shows Boolean capabilities; the second line shows numeric capabilities; and the third shows string capabilities.

The Boolean capabilities indicate the presence or absence of a capability. They take no arguments. The terminal in the example has automatic margins (**am**) and uses the **XON/XOFF** handshaking protocols (**xon**).

The numeric capabilities show size, spacing, or some other measurement. The capability is followed immediately by a pound sign (**#**) character and a positive integer. The terminal in the example has a screen with 80 columns (**cols#80**) and tab stops initially set to every 8 characters (**it#8**).

The string capabilities describe a terminal operation. The capability is followed immediately by an equals sign (**=**), and the string that performs the operation.

The terminal in the previous example beeps the terminal when sent a `^G` sequence, performs a carriage return when sent a return character, moves the cursor down a line when sent a newline character, and scrolls forward from the bottom line of the screen when sent a newline character. (Control characters are entered in the device description as a caret (^), followed by a letter, as opposed to entered as the actual control character.)

**Padding**

Padding is used to delay further output to terminals that need extra time to process the current command. Some terminals use the `XON/XOFF` protocol instead of padding to tell the sending computer not to send the next command until the terminal is ready to receive it. Padding can still be used with the `XON/OFF` protocol so that programs can calculate the speed of functions. Padding can be specified for all string capabilities with the exception of input capabilities (names preceded with `key_`).

Padding is specified by a dollar sign (\$) followed by a number enclosed within angle brackets (for example, `$<15>`). A forward slash (/) after the number specifies that padding is mandatory; that is, it should be applied regardless of the `XON/XOFF` setting. An asterisk (\*) after the number specifies proportional padding; that is, it is applied to each line affected.

The syntax of padding specifications is summarized in Table 3-2.

**Table 3-2. Syntax of Padding Specifications**

| Padding Syntax         | Meaning                                                              |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>\$&lt;n</code>   | Indicates a delay in <i>n</i> milliseconds                           |
| <code>\$&lt;n/</code>  | Indicates the delay is mandatory                                     |
| <code>\$&lt;n*</code>  | Indicates the padding to be applied for each line affected           |
| <code>\$&lt;n/*</code> | Indicates the mandatory padding to be applied for each line affected |

---

|             |                                                                             |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note</b> | The <code>tputs()</code> routine performs the necessary padding for output. |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|

---

**3-4 TERMINFO Database**



## Parameterized Strings

Strings that require run-time parameters are described using **printf**-like escapes (**%x**). Calculations are done on a stack using Reverse Polish Notation. Parameters are pushed onto the stack, manipulated in some way, and a result is output. The left-most operators are pushed first; for example, to subtract 10 from the first parameter, you would use:

```
%p1%{10}%-
```

A complex example that describes cursor movement for the Wyse-50 follows:

```
cup=\E=%p1%\s'%'%+%c%p2%\s'%'%+%c,
```

This parameterized string is described in Table 3-3.

**Table 3-3. Explanation of Parameter Description**

| Expression | Meaning                                                                 |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| \E=        | Send cursor addressing command ^=                                       |
| %p1        | Push the first parameter onto stack                                     |
| %'\s'      | Push a space onto stack                                                 |
| %+         | Pop the first two values on stack, add them, and push sum back on stack |
| %c         | Pop the value on top of stack as an ASCII character; send to terminal   |
| %p2        | Push the second parameter onto stack                                    |
| %'\s'      | Push a space onto stack                                                 |
| %+         | Pop the first two values on stack, add them, and push sum back on stack |
| %c         | Pop the value on top of stack as ASCII character; send to terminal      |

## Stack Operators

The stack operators are defined as follows:

|                                                           |                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>%%</b>                                                 | Outputs the % character.                                                                                                         |
| <b>%char</b>                                              | Pop and print character on top of stack.                                                                                         |
| <b>%[[:]flags]<br/>[field_width[.precision] ] [doxXs]</b> | Pop the topmost value and output as specified by the <code>printf</code> -like format. Flags are <code>[- + #]</code> and space. |

---

|             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note</b> | When using the <code>-</code> flag with <code>%[doxXs]</code> , a colon ( <code>:</code> ), must be put between the <code>%</code> and <code>-</code> to distinguish the flag from the binary <code>%-</code> operator, for example, <code>%:-16.16s</code> . |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

---

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>%pn</b>                 | Push <i>n</i> th parameter onto stack where <i>n</i> is a number from 1 to 9.                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>%'c'</b>                | Push character constant <i>c</i> onto stack.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>%{nn}</b>               | Push decimal constant <i>nn</i> onto the stack.                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>%l</b>                  | Pop a pointer to a string and push the length of the string onto the stack.                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>%+ %- %* %/ %m</b>      | Pop the top two values; add ( <code>int2 + int1</code> ), subtract ( <code>int2 - int1</code> ), multiply ( <code>int2 * int1</code> ), divide ( <code>int2 / int1</code> ), or modulo ( <code>int2 mod int1</code> ), and push the result. |
| <b>%&amp; %  %^</b>        | Pop the top two values, perform bitwise AND ( <code>int2 &amp; int1</code> ), bitwise OR ( <code>int2   int1</code> ), or bitwise XOR ( <code>int2 ^ int1</code> )                                                                          |
| <b>%= %&gt; &lt; %A %0</b> | Pop the top two values, push <code>TRUE</code> or <code>FALSE</code> depending on whether operators are equal, second is greater than first, second is less than first, both are true, either are true, respectively.                       |
| <b>%! </b>                 | Pop the top value and push its logical NOT.                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>%~</b>                  | Pop the top value and push its bitwise NOT.                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

## 3-6 TERMINFO Database

**%i** For ANSI terminals, increment first parameter by one, if one parameter present, or increment first two parameters by one, if more than one parameter present.

**[%? expr %t thenpart %e elsepart %;** Execute thenpart if expr is TRUE; otherwise execute elsepart (elsepart is optional). Else-if's are possible:

**[%? c1 %t b1 %e c2 %t b2 %e c3 %t b3, %e c4 %t b4 %e b5 %;**

where **ci** are conditions and **bi** are bodies.

The following example describes more complex cursor movements using some of the stack operators described previously. For example, the **hp2392a** terminal needs to be sent the column before the row for cursor addressing. See Table 3-4 following the example for a complete explanation.

cup=\E&a%p2%dc%p1%dY,

**Table 3-4. hp2392a Terminal Cursor Movement**

| Expression | Meaning                                  |
|------------|------------------------------------------|
| \E&a       | Send ^ [&a                               |
| %p2\       | Push the second parameter onto the stack |
| %d         | Print top of stack as decimal number     |
| c          | Send character c                         |
| %p1        | Push the first parameter onto the stack  |
| %d         | Print top of stack as decimal number     |
| Y          | Send character Y                         |

The following is an example of a cursor movement string for the ANSI terminal. The explanation of each argument is shown in Table 3-5.

cup=\E[%i%p1%d;%p2%dH,

**Table 3-5. ANSI Terminal Cursor Movement**

| Expression | Meaning                                         |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| \E[        | Send ^[[                                        |
| %i         | Increment the first and second parameter by one |
| %p1        | Push the first parameter onto the stack         |
| %d         | Print top of stack as a decimal number          |
| ;          | Send character ;                                |
| %p2        | Push the second parameter onto the stack        |
| %d         | Print top of stack as decimal number            |
| H          | Send character H                                |

---

## Creating Device Descriptions

The easiest way to create a new entry for a device is to find one that is similar, modify it, and compile it using the `tic` utility. The `tic` utility installs the new definition in the `TERMINFO` directory hierarchy. You can change the location of the directory hierarchy by redefining the `TERMINFO` environment variable.

You can test your description in small segments using `VI`. Keep in mind that a unusual device may not be adequately described by `TERMINFO` or adequately tested by `VI`.

A terminal can be defined as having certain capabilities that are equivalent to those of another terminal. These capabilities are then read from one terminal description into the other. The `use` capability names the terminal from which to read the capabilities. Any capabilities listed before the `use` string override those put in place by `use`. A capability that should not be used in the terminal description can be cancelled by typing an at sign (`@`) after the name of the capability. The following example bases the definition of a VT-100 terminal without automatic margins on a standard VT-100 terminal definition.

```
vt100-nam|VT100 without automatic margins,
```

### 3-8 TERMINFO Database

```
am@, use=vt100,
```

A crude test for getting the right amount of padding for insert-line (if not documented) is to comment out `xon`, edit a large file at 9600 baud with VI, delete 16 or so lines from the middle of the screen, and press the `␣` key several times quickly. If the display becomes corrupted, insert-line requires more padding.

## Special Characters

Table 3-6 summarizes all the special characters sequences discussed to this point.

**Table 3-6. Characters with Special Values**

| Character | Meaning                                                      |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| ,         | Separates capabilities                                       |
| #         | Precedes integer value in numeric capabilities               |
| =         | Separates string capability name from string sequence        |
| @         | Cancels capability                                           |
| #         | At the beginning of line, comments out the line              |
| .         | When directly preceding a capability, period comments it out |
| ^x        | Control x sequence                                           |
| \E        | Escape character                                             |
| \e        | Escape character                                             |
| \n        | Newline character                                            |
| \r        | Return character                                             |
| \t        | Tab character                                                |
| \v        | Vertical tab character                                       |
| \b        | Backspace character                                          |
| \f        | Formfeed character                                           |
| \s        | Space character                                              |
| \l        | Linefeed character                                           |
| \a        | Alert character                                              |

### **3-10 TERMINFO Database**

**Table 3-6. Characters with Special Values (continued)**

| Character                  | Meaning                                                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>\xxx</code>          | Octal characters (must be three characters)            |
| <code>\,</code>            | Escapes a comma                                        |
| <code>\\</code>            | Escapes a backslash                                    |
| <code>\^</code>            | Escapes a caret                                        |
| <code>\:</code>            | Escapes a colon                                        |
| <code>\0</code>            | Escapes a null character                               |
| <code>%x</code>            | String using format operator                           |
| <code>\$&lt;n&gt;</code>   | Indicates a delay in <i>n</i> milliseconds             |
| <code>\$&lt;n/&gt;</code>  | Indicates the delay is mandatory                       |
| <code>\$&lt;n*&gt;</code>  | Indicates the padding required per affected line       |
| <code>\$&lt;n/*&gt;</code> | Indicates mandatory padding required per affected line |

## Names of Capabilities

Capability names are normally kept to two to five characters and normally comply with ANSI X3.64-1979. Each capability has a corresponding variable name used in the program to access it; for example, the variable defined for **am** is **auto\_left\_margin**.

The Boolean, number, and string capabilities are listed in the tables on the following pages. Within these tables, each **TERMINFO** capability name is listed, along with the equivalent **termcap** name, the variable name, and a brief description. The *#i* symbol that sometimes appears in the description section of the table refers to the *i*th parameter.

Additional tables sorted by variable name may be found in Table 3-20, Table 3-21, and Table 3-22 as a reference for programmers. Table 3-20 lists the capabilities by the Boolean variable name; Table 3-21 lists the capabilities by the numeric variable name, and Table 3-22 lists the capabilities by the string variable name.

## Boolean Capabilities

Table 3-7 lists the Boolean capabilities.

**Table 3-7. Boolean Capabilities**

| TInfo | TCap | Variable                 | Description                                       |
|-------|------|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| am    | am   | auto_right_margin        | Terminal has automatic margins                    |
| bw    | bw   | auto_left_margin         | cub1 wraps from column 0 to last column           |
| ccc   | cc   | can_change               | Terminal can redefine existing color              |
| chts  | HC   | hard_cursor              | Cursor is hard to see                             |
| cpix  | YF   | cpi_changes_res          | Changing character pitch changes resolution       |
| crxm  | YB   | cr_cancels_micro_mode    | Using cr turns off micro mode                     |
| da    | da   | memory_above             | Display may be retained above the screen          |
| daisy | YC   | has_print_wheel          | Printer needs operator to change character set    |
| db    | db   | memory_below             | Display may be retained below the screen          |
| eo    | eo   | erase_overstrike         | Terminal can erase overstrikes with a blank       |
| eslok | es   | status_line_esc_ok       | Escape can be used on the status line             |
| gn    | gn   | generic_type             | Generic line type (e.g. dialup, switch)           |
| hc    | hc   | hard_copy                | Hardcopy terminal                                 |
| hls   | hl   | hue_lightness_saturation | Terminal uses only HLS color notation (Tektronix) |
| hs    | hs   | has_status_line          | Terminal has extra status line                    |
| hz    | hz   | tilde_glitch             | Hazeltine: cannot print tilde (~)                 |
| in    | in   | insert_null_glitch       | Insert mode distinguishes nulls                   |
| km    | km   | has_meta_key             | Terminal has meta key (shift, sets parity bit)    |

## 3-12 TERMINFO Database



**Table 3-7. Boolean Capabilities (continued)**

| <b>TInfo</b> | <b>TCap</b> | <b>Variable</b>        | <b>Description</b>                                    |
|--------------|-------------|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| lpix         | YG          | lpi_changes_res        | Changing line pitch changes resolution                |
| mc5i         | 5i          | prtr_silent            | Printer will not echo on screen                       |
| mir          | mi          | move_insert_mode       | Safe to move in insert mode                           |
| msgr         | ms          | move_standout_mode     | Safe to move in standout mode                         |
| npc          | NP          | no_pad_char            | Pad character does not exist                          |
| nrrmc        | NR          | non_rev_rmcup          | smcup does not reverse rmcup                          |
| nxon         | nx          | needs_xon_xoff         | Padding will not work, XON/XOFF required              |
| os           | os          | over_strike            | Terminal overstrikes                                  |
| sam          | YE          | semi_auto_right_margin | Printing in last column causes cr                     |
| ul           | ul          | transparent_underline  | Underline character overstrikes                       |
| xenl         | xn          | eat_newline_glitch     | Newline ignored after 80 columns (Concept)            |
| xhp          | xs          | ceol_standout_glitch   | Standout not erased by overwriting (hp)               |
| xhpa         | YA          | col_addr_glitch        | Only positive motion for hpa/mhpa capabilities        |
| xon          | xo          | xon_xoff               | Terminal uses XON/XOFF handshaking                    |
| xsb          | xb          | no_esc_ctlc            | Beehive (f1=escape, f2=ctrl C)                        |
| xt           | xt          | dest_tabs_magic_sms0   | Tabs destructive, magic sms0 character (Teleray 1061) |
| xvpa         | YD          | row_addr_glitch        | Only positive motion for vpa/mvpa capabilities        |

**Numeric Capabilities**

Table 3-8 lists the numeric capabilities.

**Table 3-8. Numeric Capabilities**

| <b>TInfo</b> | <b>TCap</b> | <b>Variable</b>      | <b>Description</b>                               |
|--------------|-------------|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| bufsz        | Ya          | buffer_capacity      | Number of bytes buffered before printing         |
| colors       | Co          | max_colors           | Maximum number of colors on the screen           |
| cols         | co          | columns              | Number of columns in a line                      |
| it           | it          | init_tabs            | Number of spaces between initial tabs            |
| lh           | lh          | label_height         | Number of rows in each label                     |
| lines        | li          | lines                | Number of lines on screen or page                |
| lm           | lm          | lines_of_memory      | Lines of memory if > 0; 0 means unfixed          |
| lw           | lw          | label_width          | Number of columns in each label                  |
| maddr        | Yd          | max_micro_address    | Maximum value in micro_ ... _address             |
| mcs          | Yf          | micro_col_size       | Character step size when in micro mode           |
| mjump        | Ye          | max_micro_jump       | Maximum value in parm_ ... _micro                |
| mls          | Yg          | micro_line_size      | Line step size when in micro mode                |
| ncv          | NC          | no_color_video       | Video attributes that cannot be used with colors |
| nlab         | Nl          | num_labels           | Number of labels on screen (start at 1)          |
| npins        | yH          | number_of_pins       | Number of pins in print-head                     |
| orc          | Yi          | output_res_char      | Horz. res. in units per character                |
| orhi         | Yk          | output_res_horz_inch | Horz. res. in units per inch                     |
| orl          | Yj          | output_res_line      | Vert. res. in units per line                     |
| orvi         | Yl          | output_res_vert_inch | Vert. res. in units per inch                     |
| pairs        | pa          | max_pairs            | Maximum number of color pairs on the screen      |

### **3-14 TERMINFO Database**

**Table 3-8. Numeric Capabilities (continued)**

| <b>TInfo</b> | <b>TCap</b> | <b>Variable</b>            | <b>Description</b>                                     |
|--------------|-------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>pb</b>    | <b>pb</b>   | <b>padding_baud_rate</b>   | Lowest baud rate where cr/nl padding needed            |
| <b>spinh</b> | <b>Yc</b>   | <b>dot_horz_spacing</b>    | Spacing of dots horizontally in dots per inch          |
| <b>spinv</b> | <b>Yb</b>   | <b>dot_vert_spacing</b>    | Spacing of pins vertically in pins per inch            |
| <b>vt</b>    | <b>vt</b>   | <b>virtual_termina</b>     | Virtual terminal number (CB/UNIX)                      |
| <b>widcs</b> | <b>Yn</b>   | <b>wide_char_size</b>      | Character step size when in double wide mode           |
| <b>wsl</b>   | <b>ws</b>   | <b>width_status_line</b>   | Number of columns in status line                       |
| <b>xmc</b>   | <b>sg</b>   | <b>magic_cookie_glitch</b> | Number of blank chars left by <b>sms</b> or <b>rms</b> |

### **String Capabilities**

Table 3-9 lists the string capabilities.

**Table 3-9. String Capabilities**

| <b>TInfo</b> | <b>TCap</b> | <b>Variable</b>      | <b>Description</b>                                   |
|--------------|-------------|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| acsc         | ac          | acs_chars            | Graphics character set pairs aAbBcC-defn=vt100       |
| bel          | bl          | bell                 | Produce audible signal (bell or beep)                |
| blink        | mb          | enter_blink_mode     | Turn on blinking                                     |
| bold         | md          | enter_bold_mode      | Turn on bold (extra bright) mode                     |
| cbt          | bt          | back_tab             | Back tab                                             |
| chr          | ZC          | change_res_horz      | Change horizontal resolution                         |
| civis        | vi          | cursor_invisible     | Make cursor invisible                                |
| clear        | cl          | clear_screen         | Clear screen                                         |
| cmdch        | CC          | command_character    | Terminal settable command character in prototype     |
| cnorm        | ve          | cursor_normal        | Make cursor appear normal (undo <i>cvvis/civis</i> ) |
| cpi          | ZA          | change_char_pitch    | Change number of characters per inch                 |
| cr           | cr          | carriage_return      | Move cursor to left edge of screen                   |
| csnm         | Zy          | char_set_names       | List of character set names                          |
| csr          | cs          | change_scroll_region | Change to lines #1 through #2 (vt100)                |
| cub          | LE          | parm_left_cursor     | Move cursor left #1 spaces                           |
| cub1         | le          | cursor_left          | Move cursor left one space                           |
| cud          | DO          | parm_down_cursor     | Move cursor down #1 lines                            |
| cud1         | do          | cursor_down          | Move cursor down one line                            |
| cuf          | RI          | parm_right_cursor    | Move cursor right #1 spaces                          |
| cuf1         | nd          | cursor_right         | Non-destructive space (cursor right)                 |

**3-16 TERMINFO Database**

**Table 3-9. String Capabilities (continued)**

| TInfo | TCap | Variable         | Description                           |
|-------|------|------------------|---------------------------------------|
| cup   | cm   | cursor_address   | Cursor motion to row #1 col #2        |
| cuu   | UP   | parm_up_cursor   | Move cursor up #1 lines               |
| cuu1  | up   | cursor_up        | Move cursor up                        |
| cvr   | ZD   | change_res_vert  | Change vertical resolution            |
| cvvis | vs   | cursor_visible   | Make cursor very visible              |
| dch   | DC   | parm_dch         | Delete #1 characters                  |
| dch1  | dc   | delete_character | Delete character                      |
| defc  | ZE   | define_char      | Define a character in a character set |
| dim   | mh   | enter_dim_mode   | Turn on half-bright mode              |
| dl    | DL   | parm_delete_line | Delete #1 lines                       |
| dl1   | dl   | delete_line      | Delete line                           |
| docr  | Zw   | these_cause_cr   | Printing any of these chars causes cr |
| dsl   | ds   | dis_status_line  | Disable status line                   |
| ech   | ec   | erase_chars      | Erase #1 characters                   |
| ed    | cd   | clr_eos          | Clear to end of display               |
| el    | ce   | clr_eol          | Clear to end of line                  |
| el1   | cb   | clr_bol          | Clear to beginning of line, inclusive |
| enacs | eA   | ena_acs          | Enable alternate character set        |
| ff    | ff   | form_feed        | Hardcopy terminal page eject          |
| flash | vb   | flash_screen     | Visible bell (may not move cursor)    |
| fsl   | fs   | from_status_line | Return from status line               |
| hd    | hd   | down_half_line   | Half-line down (forward 1/2 linefeed) |
| home  | ho   | cursor_home      | Home cursor (if no cup)               |

**Table 3-9. String Capabilities (continued)**

| <b>TInfo</b> | <b>TCap</b> | <b>Variable</b>   | <b>Description</b>                        |
|--------------|-------------|-------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| hpa          | ch          | column_address    | Set cursor column                         |
| ht           | ta          | tab               | Tab to next 8 space hardware tab stop     |
| hts          | st          | set_tab           | Set a tab in all rows, current column     |
| hu           | hu          | up_half_line      | Half-line up (reverse 1/2 linefeed)       |
| ich          | IC          | parm_ich          | Insert #1 blank characters                |
| ich1         | ic          | insert_character  | Insert character                          |
| if           | if          | init_file         | Name of file containing is                |
| il           | AL          | parm_insert_line  | Add #1 new blank lines                    |
| il1          | al          | insert_line       | Add new blank line                        |
| ind          | sf          | scroll_forward    | Scroll text up                            |
| indn         | SF          | parm_index        | Scroll forward #1 lines                   |
| initc        | Ic          | initialize_color  | Initialize the definition of color        |
| initp        | Ip          | initialize_pair   | Initialize color pair                     |
| invis        | mk          | enter_secure_mode | Turn on blank mode (characters invisible) |
| ip           | ip          | insert_padding    | Insert pad after character inserted       |
| ipro         | iP          | init_prog         | Pathname of program for initialization    |
| is1=         | i1          | init_1string      | Terminal initialization string            |
| is2=         | is          | init_2string      | Terminal initialization string            |
| is3=         | i3          | init_3string      | Terminal initialization string            |
| kBEG         | &9          | key_sbeg          | Sent by shift-beginning key               |
| kCAN         | &0          | key_scancel       | Sent by shift-cancel key                  |
| kCMD         | *1          | key_scommand      | Sent by shift-command key                 |
| kCPY         | *2          | key_scopy         | Sent by shift-copy key                    |

**3-18 TERMINFO Database**

**Table 3-9. String Capabilities (continued)**

| <b>TInfo</b> | <b>TCap</b> | <b>Variable</b> | <b>Description</b>            |
|--------------|-------------|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| kCRT         | *3          | key_screate     | Sent by shift-create key      |
| kDC          | *4          | key_sdc         | Sent by shift-delete-char key |
| kDL          | *5          | key_sdl         | Sent by shift-delete-line key |
| kEND         | *7          | key_send        | Sent by shift-end key         |
| kEOL         | *8          | key_seol        | Sent by shift-eol key         |
| kEXT         | *9          | key_sexit       | Sent by shift-exit key        |
| kFND         | *0          | key_sfind       | Sent by shift-find key        |
| kHLP         | #1          | key_shelp       | Sent by shift-help key        |
| kHOM         | #2          | key_shome       | Sent by shift-home key        |
| kIC          | #3          | key_sic         | Sent by shift-insert-char key |
| kLFT         | #4          | key_sleft       | Sent by shift-left key        |
| kMOV         | %b          | key_smove       | Sent by shift-move key        |
| kMSG         | %a          | key_smessage    | Sent by shift-message key     |
| kNXT         | %c          | key_snext       | Sent by shift-next key        |
| kOPT         | %d          | key_soptions    | Sent by shift-options key     |
| kPRT         | %f          | key_sprint      | Sent by shift-print key       |
| kPRV         | %e          | key_sprevious   | Sent by shift-prev key        |
| kRDO         | g           | key_sredo       | Sent by shift-redo key        |
| kRES         | %j          | key_srsume      | Sent by shift-resume key      |
| kRIT         | %i          | key_sright      | Sent by shift-right key       |
| krPL         | %h          | key_sreplace    | Sent by shift-replace key     |
| kSAV         | !1          | key_ssave       | Sent by shift-save key        |
| kSPD         | !2          | key_ssuspend    | Sent by shift-suspend key     |
| kUND         | !3          | key_sundo       | Sent by shift-undo key        |

**Table 3-9. String Capabilities (continued)**

| <b>TInfo</b> | <b>TCap</b> | <b>Variable</b> | <b>Description</b>                 |
|--------------|-------------|-----------------|------------------------------------|
| ka1          | K1          | key_a1          | Upper left of keypad               |
| ka3          | K3          | key_a3          | Upper right of keypad              |
| kb2          | K2          | key_b2          | Center of keypad                   |
| kbeg         | 01          | key_beg         | Sent by beginning key              |
| kbs          | kb          | key_backspace   | Sent by backspace key              |
| kc1          | K4          | key_c1          | Lower left of keypad               |
| kc3          | K5          | key_c3          | Lower right of keypad              |
| kcan         | 02          | key_cancel      | Sent by cancel key                 |
| kcbt         | kB          | key_btab        | Sent by BackTab key                |
| kclo         | 03          | key_close       | Sent by close key                  |
| kclr         | kC          | key_clear       | Sent by clear screen or erase key  |
| kcmd         | 04          | key_command     | Sent by command key                |
| kcpy         | 05          | key_copy        | Sent by copy key                   |
| kcreate      | 06          | key_create      | Sent by create key                 |
| kctab        | kt          | key_ctab        | Sent by clear-tab key              |
| kcub1        | k1          | key_left        | Sent by terminal left arrow key    |
| kcud1        | kd          | key_down        | Sent by terminal down arrow key    |
| kcuf1        | kr          | key_right       | Sent by terminal right arrow key   |
| kcuu1        | ku          | key_up          | Sent by terminal up arrow key      |
| kdch1        | kD          | key_dc          | Sent by delete character key       |
| kd11         | kL          | key_dl          | Sent by delete line key            |
| ked          | kS          | key_eos         | Sent by clear-to-end-of-screen key |
| kel          | kE          | key_eol         | Sent by clear-to-end-of-line key   |

**3-20 TERMINFO Database**



**Table 3-9. String Capabilities (continued)**

| <b>TInfo</b> | <b>TCap</b> | <b>Variable</b> | <b>Description</b>       |
|--------------|-------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| kend         | @7          | key_end         | Sent by end key          |
| kent         | @8          | key_enter       | Sent by enter/send key   |
| kext         | @9          | key_exit        | Sent by exit key         |
| kf0          | k0          | key_f0          | Sent by function key f0  |
| kf1          | k1          | key_f1          | Sent by function key f1  |
| kf2          | k2          | key_f2          | Sent by function key f2  |
| kf3          | k3          | key_f3          | Sent by function key f3  |
| kf4          | k4          | key_f4          | Sent by function key f4  |
| kf5          | k5          | key_f5          | Sent by function key f5  |
| kf6          | k6          | key_f6          | Sent by function key f6  |
| kf7          | k7          | key_f7          | Sent by function key f7  |
| kf8          | k8          | key_f8          | Sent by function key f8  |
| kf9          | k9          | key_f9          | Sent by function key f9  |
| kf10         | k;          | key_f10         | Sent by function key f10 |
| kf11         | F1          | key_f11         | Sent by function key 11  |
| kf12         | F2          | key_f12         | Sent by function key 12  |
| kf13         | F3          | key_f13         | Sent by function key 13  |
| kf14         | F4          | key_f14         | Sent by function key 14  |
| kf15         | F5          | key_f15         | Sent by function key 15  |
| kf16         | F6          | key_f16         | Sent by function key 16  |
| kf17         | F7          | key_f17         | Sent by function key 17  |
| kf18         | F8          | key_f18         | Sent by function key 18  |
| kf19         | F9          | key_f19         | Sent by function key 19  |

**Table 3-9. String Capabilities (continued)**

| TInfo | TCap | Variable | Description             |
|-------|------|----------|-------------------------|
| kf20  | FA   | key_f20  | Sent by function key 20 |
| kf21  | FB   | key_f21  | Sent by function key 21 |
| kf22  | FC   | key_f22  | Sent by function key 22 |
| kf23  | FD   | key_f23  | Sent by function key 23 |
| kf24  | FE   | key_f24  | Sent by function key 24 |
| kf25  | FF   | key_f25  | Sent by function key 25 |
| kf26  | FG   | key_f26  | Sent by function key 26 |
| kf27  | FH   | key_f27  | Sent by function key 27 |
| kf28  | FI   | key_f28  | Sent by function key 28 |
| kf29  | FJ   | key_f29  | Sent by function key 29 |
| kf30  | FK   | key_f30  | Sent by function key 30 |
| kf31  | FL   | key_f31  | Sent by function key 31 |
| kf32  | FM   | key_f32  | Sent by function key 32 |
| kf33  | FN   | key_f33  | Sent by function key 33 |
| kf34  | FO   | key_f34  | Sent by function key 34 |
| kf35  | FP   | key_f35  | Sent by function key 35 |
| kf36  | FQ   | key_f36  | Sent by function key 36 |
| kf37  | FR   | key_f37  | Sent by function key 37 |
| kf38  | FS   | key_f38  | Sent by function key 38 |
| kf39  | FT   | key_f39  | Sent by function key 39 |
| kf40  | FU   | key_f40  | Sent by function key 40 |
| kf41  | FV   | key_f41  | Sent by function key 41 |
| kf42  | FW   | key_f42  | Sent by function key 42 |

**3-22 TERMINFO Database**

**Table 3-9. String Capabilities (continued)**

| TInfo | TCap | Variable | Description             |
|-------|------|----------|-------------------------|
| kf43  | FX   | key_f43  | Sent by function key 43 |
| kf44  | FY   | key_f44  | Sent by function key 44 |
| kf45  | FZ   | key_f45  | Sent by function key 45 |
| kf46  | Fa   | key_f46  | Sent by function key 46 |
| kf47  | Fb   | key_f47  | Sent by function key 47 |
| kf48  | Fc   | key_f48  | Sent by function key 48 |
| kf49  | Fd   | key_f49  | Sent by function key 49 |
| kf50  | Fe   | key_f50  | Sent by function key 50 |
| kf51  | Ff   | key_f51  | Sent by function key 51 |
| kf52  | Fg   | key_f52  | Sent by function key 52 |
| kf53  | Fh   | key_f53  | Sent by function key 53 |
| kf54  | Fi   | key_f54  | Sent by function key 54 |
| kf55  | Fj   | key_f55  | Sent by function key 55 |
| kf56  | Fk   | key_f56  | Sent by function key 56 |
| kf57  | Fl   | key_f57  | Sent by function key 57 |
| kf58  | Fm   | key_f58  | Sent by function key 58 |
| kf59  | Fn   | key_f59  | Sent by function key 59 |
| kf60  | Fo   | key_f60  | Sent by function key 60 |
| kf61  | Fp   | key_f61  | Sent by function key 61 |
| kf62  | Fq   | key_f62  | Sent by function key 62 |
| kf63  | Fr   | key_f63  | Sent by function key 63 |
| kfnd  | @0   | key_find | Sent by find key        |
| khlp  | %1   | key_help | Sent by help key        |

**Table 3-9. String Capabilities (continued)**

| <b>TInfo</b> | <b>TCap</b> | <b>Variable</b> | <b>Description</b>                                |
|--------------|-------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| khome        | kh          | key_home        | Sent by home key                                  |
| khts         | kT          | key_stab        | Sent by set-tab key                               |
| kich1        | kI          | key_ic          | Sent by ins char/enter ins mode key               |
| kil1         | kA          | key_il          | Sent by insert line                               |
| kind         | kF          | key_sf          | Sent by scroll-forward/down key                   |
| kll          | kH          | key_ll          | Sent by home down key (lower left)                |
| kmov         | %4          | key_move        | Sent by move key                                  |
| kmrk         | %2          | key_mark        | Sent by mark key                                  |
| kmsg         | %3          | key_message     | Sent by message key                               |
| knnp         | kN          | key_npage       | Sent by next-page key                             |
| knxt         | %5          | key_next        | Sent by next-object key                           |
| kopn         | %6          | key_open        | Sent by open key                                  |
| kopt         | %7          | key_options     | Sent by options key                               |
| kpp          | kP          | key_ppage       | Sent by previous-page key                         |
| kprr         | %9          | key_print       | Sent by print or copy key                         |
| kprv         | %8          | key_previous    | Sent by previous-object key                       |
| krdo         | %0          | key_redo        | Sent by redo key                                  |
| kref         | &1          | key_reference   | Sent by reference key                             |
| kres         | &5          | key_resume      | Sent by resume key                                |
| krfr         | &2          | key_refresh     | Sent by refresh key                               |
| kri          | kR          | key_sr          | Sent by scroll-backward/up key                    |
| krmir        | kM          | key_eic         | Sent by <b>rmir</b> or <b>smir</b> in insert mode |
| krpl         | &3          | key_replace     | Sent by replace key                               |

**3-24 TERMINFO Database**

**Table 3-9. String Capabilities (continued)**

| <b>TInfo</b> | <b>TCap</b> | <b>Variable</b>   | <b>Description</b>                    |
|--------------|-------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------|
| krst         | &4          | key_restart       | Sent by restart key                   |
| ksav         | &6          | key_save          | Sent by save key                      |
| kslt         | *6          | key_select        | Sent by select key                    |
| kspd         | &7          | key_suspend       | Sent by suspend key                   |
| ktbc         | ka          | key_catab         | Sent by clear-all-tabs key            |
| kund         | &8          | key_undo          | Sent by undo key                      |
| lf0          | 10          | lab_f0            | Labels on function key f0 if not f0   |
| lf1          | 11          | lab_f1            | Labels on function key f1 if not f1   |
| lf2          | 12          | lab_f2            | Labels on function key f2 if not f2   |
| lf3          | 13          | lab_f3            | Labels on function key f3 if not f3   |
| lf4          | 14          | lab_f4            | Labels on function key f4 if not f4   |
| lf5          | 15          | lab_f5            | Labels on function key f5 if not f5   |
| lf6          | 16          | lab_f6            | Labels on function key f6 if not f6   |
| lf7          | 17          | lab_f7            | Labels on function key f7 if not f7   |
| lf8          | 18          | lab_f8            | Labels on function key f8 if not f8   |
| lf9          | 19          | lab_f9            | Labels on function key f9 if not f9   |
| lf10         | 1a          | lab_f10           | Labels on function key f10 if not f10 |
| ll           | 11          | cursor_to_ll      | Last line, first column (if no cup)   |
| lpi          | ZB          | change_line_pitch | Change number of lines per inch       |
| mc0          | ps          | print_screen      | Print contents of the screen          |
| mc4          | pf          | prtr_off          | Turn off the printer                  |
| mc5          | po          | prtr_on           | Turn on the printer                   |
| mc5p         | p0          | prtr_non          | Turn on the printer for #1 bytes      |

**Table 3-9. String Capabilities (continued)**

| <b>TInfo</b> | <b>TCap</b> | <b>Variable</b>      | <b>Description</b>                                |
|--------------|-------------|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| mcub         | Zg          | parm_left_micro      | Like parm_left_cursor                             |
| mcub1        | Za          | micro_left           | Like cursor_left for micro adjustment             |
| mcud         | Zf          | parm_down_micro      | Like parm_down_cursor                             |
| mcud1        | ZZ          | micro_down           | Like cursor_down for micro adjustment             |
| mcuf         | Zh          | parm_right_micro     | Like parm_right_cursor                            |
| mcuf1        | Zb          | micro_right          | Like cursor_right for micro adjustment            |
| mcuu         | Zi          | parm_up_micro        | Like parm_up_cursor                               |
| mcuu1        | Zd          | micro_up             | Like cursor_up for micro adjustment               |
| mgc          | MC          | clear_margins        | Clear all margins top, bottom,                    |
| mhp          | ZY          | micro_column_address | Like column_address for micro adjustment          |
| mrcup        | CM          | cursor_mem_address   | Memory relative cursor addressing                 |
| mvp          | Zc          | micro_row_address    | Like row_address for micro adjustment             |
| nel          | nw          | newline              | Produces newline (behaves like cr followed by lf) |
| oc           | oc 0        | orig_colors          | Set all color(pair)s to the original ones         |
| op           | op          | orig_pair            | Set default color pair to the original one        |
| pad          | pc          | pad_char             | Pad character (rather than null)                  |
| pfkey        | pk          | pkey_key             | Prog funct key #1 to type string #2               |
| pfloc        | pl          | pkey_local           | Prog funct key #1 to execute string #2            |
| pfx          | px          | pkey_xmit            | Prog funct key #1 to xmit string #2               |
| pln          | pn          | plab_norm            | Prog label #1 to show string #2                   |
| porder       | Ze          | order_of_pins        | Matches software bits to print-head pins          |
| prot         | mp          | enter_protected_mode | Turn on protected mode                            |
| rbim         | Zs          | stop_bit_image       | Stop printing bit image graphics                  |
| rc           | rc          | restore_cursor       | Restore cursor to position of last sc             |

**Table 3-9. String Capabilities (continued)**

| TInfo | TCap | Variable              | Description                               |
|-------|------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| rcsd  | Zt   | stop_char_set_def     | Stop definition of character set          |
| rep   | rp   | repeat_char           | Repeat char #1 #2 times                   |
| rev   | mr   | enter_reverse_mode    | Turn on reverse video mode                |
| rf    | rf   | reset_file            | Name of file containing reset string      |
| rfi   | RF   | req_for_input         | Send next input character (for ptys)      |
| ri    | ri   | scroll_reverse        | Scroll text down                          |
| rin   | SR   | parm_rindex           | Scroll backward #1 lines                  |
| ritm  | ZR   | exit_italics_mode     | Disable italics                           |
| rlm   | ZS   | exit_leftward_mode    | Enable rightward (normal) carriage motion |
| rmacs | ae   | exit_alt_charset_mode | End alternate character set               |
| rmam  | RA   | exit_am_mode          | Turn off automatic margins                |
| rmcup | te   | exit_ca_mode          | String to begin programs that use cup     |
| rmdc  | ed   | exit_delete_mode      | End delete mode                           |
| rmicm | ZT   | exit_micro_mode       | Disable micro motion capabilities         |
| rmir  | ei   | exit_insert_mode      | End insert mode                           |
| rmkx  | ke   | keypad_local          | Out of keypad transmit mode               |
| rmln  | LF   | label_off             | Turn off soft labels                      |
| rmm   | mo   | meta_off              | Turn off meta mode                        |
| rmp   | rP   | char_padding          | Like ip, but when in replace mode         |
| rmso  | se   | exit_standout_mode    | End stand out mode                        |
| rmul  | ue   | exit_underline_mode   | End underscore mode                       |
| rmxon | RX   | exit_xon_mode         | Turn off XON/XOFF handshaking             |
| rs1   | r1   | reset_1string         | Reset terminal completely to sane modes   |

**Table 3-9. String Capabilities (continued)**

| <b>TInfo</b> | <b>TCap</b> | <b>Variable</b>        | <b>Description</b>                         |
|--------------|-------------|------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| rs2          | r2          | reset_2string          | Reset terminal completely to sane modes    |
| rs3          | r3          | reset_3string          | Reset terminal completely to sane modes    |
| rshm         | ZU          | exit_shadow_mode       | Disable shadow printing                    |
| wsubm        | ZV          | exit_subscript_mode    | Disable subscript printing                 |
| rsupm        | ZW          | exit_superscript_mode  | Disable superscript printing               |
| rum          | ZX          | exit_upward_mode       | Enable downward (normal) carriage motion   |
| rwidm        | ZQ          | exit_doublewide_mode   | Disable double wide printing               |
| sbim         | Zq          | start_bit_image        | Start printing bit image graphics          |
| sc           | sc          | save_cursor            | Save cursor position                       |
| scp          | sp          | set_color_pair         | Set current color pair                     |
| scs          | Zj          | select_char_set        | Select character set                       |
| scsd         | Zr          | start_char_set_def     | Start definition of character set          |
| sdrfq        | ZG          | enter_draft_quality    | Set draft quality print                    |
| setb         | Sb          | set_background         | Set current background color               |
| setf         | Sf          | set_foreground         | Set current foreground color               |
| sgr          | sa          | set_attributes         | Define the video attributes                |
| sgr0         | me          | exit_attribute_mode    | Turn off all attributes                    |
| sitm         | ZH          | enter_italics_mode     | Enable italics                             |
| slm          | ZI          | enter_leftward_mode    | Enable leftward carriage motion            |
| smacs        | as          | enter_alt_charset_mode | Start alternate character set              |
| smam         | SA          | enter_am_mode          | Turn on automatic margins                  |
| smcup        | ti          | enter_ca_mode          | String to end programs that use <b>cup</b> |
| smdc         | dm          | enter_delete_mode      | Delete mode (enter)                        |
| smgb         | Zk          | set_bottom_margin      | Set bottom margin at current line          |



**Table 3-9. String Capabilities (continued)**

| <b>TInfo</b> | <b>TCap</b> | <b>Variable</b>           | <b>Description</b>                             |
|--------------|-------------|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| smgbp        | Zl          | set_bottom_margin_parm    | Set bottom margin at line #1 or #2 from bottom |
| smgl         | ML          | set_left_margin           | Set left margin at current column              |
| smglp        | Zm          | set_left_margin_parm      | Set left (right) margin at column #1 (#2)      |
| smgr         | MR          | set_right_margin          | Set right margin at current column             |
| smgrp        | Zn          | set_right_margin_parm     | Set right margin at column #1                  |
| smgt         | Zo          | set_top_margin            | Set top margin at current line                 |
| smgtp        | Zp          | set_top_margin_parm       | Set top (bottom) margin at line #1 (#2)        |
| smicm        | ZJ          | enter_micro_mode          | Enable micro motion capabilities               |
| smir         | im          | enter_insert_mode         | Insert mode (enter)                            |
| smln         | LO          | label_on                  | Turn on soft labels                            |
| smm          | mm          | meta_on                   | Turn on meta mode (8th bit)                    |
| smso         | so          | enter_standout_mode       | Begin stand out mode                           |
| smul         | us          | enter_underline_mode      | Start underscore mode                          |
| smxon        | SX          | enter_xon_mode            | Turn on XON/XOFF handshaking                   |
| snlq         | ZK          | enter_near_letter_quality | Set near-letter quality                        |
| snrmq        | ZL          | enter_normal_quality      | Set normal quality print                       |
| sshm         | ZM          | enter_shadow_mode         | Enable shadow printing                         |
| ssubm        | ZN          | enter_subscript_mode      | Enable subscript printing                      |
| ssupm        | ZO          | enter_superscript_mode    | Enable superscript printing                    |
| subcs        | Zu          | subscript_characters      | List of “subscript-able” characters            |
| sum          | ZP          | enter_upward_mode         | Enable upward carriage msupcs                  |
| supcs        | Zv          | superscript_characters    | List of “superscript-able” characters          |

**Table 3-9. String Capabilities (continued)**

| <b>TInfo</b>       | <b>TCap</b>     | <b>Variable</b>                    | <b>Description</b>                                                                               |
|--------------------|-----------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>swidm</code> | <code>ZF</code> | <code>enter_doublewide_mode</code> | Enable double wide printing                                                                      |
| <code>tbc</code>   | <code>ct</code> | <code>clear_all_tabs</code>        | Clear all tab stops                                                                              |
| <code>tsl</code>   | <code>ts</code> | <code>to_status_line</code>        | Go to status line                                                                                |
| <code>uc</code>    | <code>uc</code> | <code>underline_char</code>        | Underscore one char and move past it                                                             |
| <code>use</code>   | <code>tc</code> | N/A                                | Read capabilities from entry                                                                     |
| <code>vpa</code>   | <code>cv</code> | <code>row_address</code>           | Like <code>hpa</code> , but sets row                                                             |
| <code>wind</code>  | <code>wi</code> | <code>set_window</code>            | Current window is lines <code>#1</code> - <code>#2</code> cols <code>#3</code> - <code>#4</code> |
| <code>xoffc</code> | <code>XF</code> | <code>xoff_character</code>        | XOFF character                                                                                   |
| <code>xonc</code>  | <code>XN</code> | <code>xon_character</code>         | XON character                                                                                    |
| <code>zerom</code> | <code>Zx</code> | <code>zero_motion</code>           | No motion for the subsequent character                                                           |

The following sections group these categories and look at each group in detail.

## Configuration Capabilities

Table 3-10 lists the capabilities used to configure terminals. Following the table are more detailed descriptions of some of these capabilities.

### 3-30 TERMINFO Database

**Table 3-10. Configuration Capabilities**

| Capability | Variable           | Description                                      |
|------------|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| acscU=     | acs_chars          | Graphics character set pairs aAbBcC-defn=vt100   |
| am         | auto_right_margin  | Wraps to next line at right margin               |
| bel=       | bell               | Produce audible signal (bell or beep)            |
| bufsz#     | buffer_capacity    | Number of bytes buffered before printing         |
| bw         | auto_left_margin   | cub1 wraps from column 0 to last column          |
| ccc        | can_change         | Terminal can redefine existing color             |
| chts       | hard_cursor        | Cursor is hard to see                            |
| cmdch=     | command_character  | Terminal settable command character in prototype |
| cols#      | columns            | Number of columns on each line                   |
| cr=        | carriage_return    | Move cursor to left edge of screen               |
| da         | memory_above       | Display may be retained above the screen         |
| db         | memory_below       | Display may be retained below the screen         |
| eo         | erase_overstrike   | Terminal can erase overstrikes with a blank      |
| eslok      | status_line_esc_ok | Escape can be used on the status line            |
| gn         | generic_type       | Generic line type (for example, dialup, switch)  |
| hc         | hard_copy          | Hardcopy terminal                                |
| hs         | has_status_line    | Terminal has extra status line                   |
| hz         | tilde_glitch       | Hazeltine: cannot print tilde (~)                |
| if=        | init_file          | Name of file containing is                       |
| iprogr=    | init_prog          | Path name of program for initialization          |
| is1=       | init_1string       | Terminal initialization string                   |
| is2=       | init_2string       | Terminal initialization string                   |
| is3=       | init_3string       | Terminal initialization string                   |

**Table 3-10. Configuration Capabilities (continued)**

| Capability | Variable               | Description                                 |
|------------|------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| lines#     | lines                  | Number of lines on the screen               |
| lm#        | lines_of_memory        | Lines of memory if > 0; 0 means unfixed     |
| nxon       | needs_xon_xoff         | Padding will not work, XON/XOFF required    |
| pad=       | pad_char               | Pad character (rather than null)            |
| pb#        | padding_baud_rate      | Lowest baud rate where cr/nl padding needed |
| os         | over_strike            | Overstrike leaves both characters on screen |
| rf=        | reset_file             | Name of file containing reset string        |
| rs1=       | reset_1string          | Reset terminal completely to sane modes     |
| rs2=       | reset_2string          | Reset terminal completely to sane modes     |
| rs3=       | reset_3string          | Reset terminal completely to sane modes     |
| rmam=      | exit_am_mode           | Turn off automatic margins                  |
| rmxon=     | exit_xon_mode          | Turn off XON/XOFF handshaking               |
| sam        | semi_auto_right_margin | Printing in last column causes cr           |
| smam=      | enter_am_mode          | Turn on automatic margins                   |
| smxon=     | enter_xon_mode         | Turn on XON/XOFF handshaking                |
| ul         | transparent_underline  | Underline character overstrikes             |
| vt#        | virtual_terminal       | Virtual terminal # (CB/UNIX)                |
| xenl       | eat_newline_glitch     | Newline ignored after 80 columns (Concept)  |
| xoffc=     | xoff_character         | XOFF character                              |
| xon        | xon_xoff               | Terminal uses XON/XOFF handshaking          |
| xonc=      | xon_character          | XON character                               |
| xsb        | no_esc_ctlc            | Beehive (f1=escape, f2=ctrl C)              |
| xt         | dest_tabs_magic_sms0   | Tabs destructive, magic sms0 character      |

**3-32 TERMINFO Database**

## Detailed Descriptions

More detailed descriptions are provided below for the following capabilities:

- **cmdch**
- **da, db**
- **gn**
- **if, iprog, is1, is2, is3**
- **lm**
- **xenl**
- **os, hc**
- **ascs**

**cmdch.** Some terminals, such as the Tektronix 4025, have a control character that can be set. The **cmdch** string describes a “dummy” control character to be used in all capabilities. Some UNIX systems support the convention of using the value of the environment variable **CC** in place of the dummy control character.

**da.** The **da** capability describes the case where deleting a line or scrolling a full screen may bring non-blank lines from below the screen; the **db** capability describes the case where scrolling back with **ri** may bring down non-blank lines from above.

**gn.** Terminal descriptions that are not specific types of terminals (such as **switch**, **dialup**, **patch**, and **network**) can be described at a basic level with **gn**. This allows the terminal to function at a low level but still complain when some operations are impossible. This capability is not used for virtual terminal descriptions supported by the UNIX system virtual terminal protocol. (Use **vt**.)

**if, iprog, is1, is2, is3.** The **if**, **iprog**, **is1**, **is2**, and **is3** strings must be sent to the device every time that the user logs in. They must be output in a certain order: run the program specified by **iprog**; output **is1**; output **is2**; set the margins with **mgc**, **smgl**, and **smgr**; set the tabs with **tbc** and **hts**; print the file specified by **if**; and output **is3** (using the **init** option of the **tput** command).

Normally initialization is done with **is2** and in special cases, **is1** and **is3**; however, sequences that reset from an unknown state can be given as **rs1**, **rs2**, **rf**, and **rs3**. (Reset strings are normally output with the **reset** option of the **tput** command.) Commands are normally placed in these strings when they have annoying results or are not needed when logging in.

**lm.** The **lm** capability is used if the terminal has more lines of memory than can be displayed on the screen simultaneously; a value of zero means that the number of lines is not fixed but that number is still more than can fit on the screen.

**xenl.** In addition to terminals that ignore a linefeed, **xenl** should be specified for terminals that do not immediately wrap when a character is read to the right-most column of the screen but wait until another character has been received (the VT100, for example).

**os, hc.** If the device is a printing terminal with no soft copy unit, both **os** and **hc** should be specified.

**ascs.** The definition of the **ascs** string is based on the DEC VT100 character set with the addition of some characters from the AT&T 4410v1 terminal. Table 3-11 illustrates the glyph to character mapping.

**Table 3-11. Glyph to Character Mapping**

| Glyph Name         | Character |
|--------------------|-----------|
| right arrow        | +         |
| left arrow         | ,         |
| down arrow         | .         |
| up arrow           | -         |
| solid square block | 0         |
| lantern symbol     | I         |
| diamond            | ‘         |

### 3-34 TERMINFO Database

**Table 3-11. Glyph to Character Mapping (continued)**

| Glyph Name              | Character |
|-------------------------|-----------|
| checker board (stipple) | a         |
| degree symbol           | f         |
| plus/minus              | g         |
| board of squares        | h         |
| lower right corner      | j         |
| upper right corner      | k         |
| upper left corner       | l         |
| lower left corner       | m         |
| plus                    | n         |
| scan line 1             | o         |
| horizontal line         | q         |
| scan line 9             | s         |

**Table 3-11. Glyph to Character Mapping (continued)**

| Glyph Name     | Character |
|----------------|-----------|
| left tee ( -)  | t         |
| right tee (- ) | u         |
| bottom tee ()  | v         |
| top tee (T)    | w         |
| vertical line  | x         |
| bullet         | ~         |

The characters are described in pairs, with the defining character for the glyph followed by the corresponding character on the device. For example, a device with the left tee, right tee, bottom tee, and top tee defined by the **f**, **g**, **h**, and **i** characters would be described as follows:

```
acsc=tfugvhw i
```

## **Cursor Movement and Scrolling Capabilities**

Table 3-12 lists the capabilities used to define cursor movements. Following the table are more detailed descriptions of some of these capabilities.



**Table 3-12. Cursor Movement Capabilities**

| Capability | Variable             | Description                                            |
|------------|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| csr=       | change_scroll_region | Change to lines #1 through #2 (vt100)                  |
| cub=       | parm_left_cursor     | Move cursor left specified number of spaces            |
| cub1=      | cursor_left          | Move cursor left one space                             |
| cud=       | parm_down_cursor     | Move down specified number of lines                    |
| cud1=      | cursor_down          | Move cursor down one line                              |
| cuf=       | parm_right_cursor    | Move cursor right specified number of spaces           |
| cuf1=      | cursor_right         | Non-destructive space (cursor right)                   |
| cup=       | cursor_address       | Move cursor to row #1 col #2                           |
| cuu=       | parm_up_cursor       | Move up specified number of lines                      |
| cuu1=      | cursor_up            | Move cursor up one line                                |
| home=      | cursor_home          | Move cursor to upper left corner of screen (if no cup) |
| hpa=       | column_address       | Absolute horizontal position                           |
| ind=       | scroll_forward       | Scroll text up                                         |
| indn=      | parm_index           | Scroll forward #1 lines                                |
| ll=        | cursor_to_ll         | Moves cursor to last line, first column (if no cup)    |
| mir        | move_insert_mode     | Safe to move in insert mode                            |
| mrcup=     | cursor_mem_address   | Memory relative cursor addressing                      |
| msgr       | move_standout_mode   | Safe to move in standout mode                          |
| nel=       | newline              | Produces newline (behaves like cr followed by lf)      |
| nrrmc=     | non_rev_rmcup        | smcup does not restore screen after rmcup              |
| rc=        | restore_cursor       | Restores cursor to position of last sc                 |
| ri=        | scroll_reverse       | Scrolls text down                                      |
| rin=       | parm_rindex          | Scrolls backward #1 lines                              |

**Table 3-12. Cursor Movement Capabilities (continued)**

| Capability    | Variable                    | Description                                                  |
|---------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>rmcup=</b> | <b>exit_ca_mode</b>         | String that ends programs that use <b>cup</b>                |
| <b>sc=</b>    | <b>save_cursor</b>          | Save cursor position                                         |
| <b>smcup=</b> | <b>enter_ca_mode</b>        | String that begins programs that use <b>cup</b>              |
| <b>vpa=</b>   | <b>row_address</b>          | Absolute vertical position                                   |
| <b>xhpa</b>   | <b>col_addr_glitch</b>      | Only positive motion for <b>hpa/mhpa</b> capabilities        |
| <b>xt</b>     | <b>dest_tabs_magic_sms0</b> | Tabs destructive, magic <b>sms0</b> character (Teleray 1061) |
| <b>xvpa</b>   | <b>row_addr_glitch</b>      | Only positive motion for <b>vpa/mvpa</b> capabilities        |

### Detailed Descriptions

More detailed descriptions are provided below for the following capabilities:

- **ind, ri**
- **cuf**
- **csr**
- **cup, cuu**
- **home**
- **mir**
- **smcup, rmcup**
- **xt**

**ind, ri.** Local cursor movements defined for **TERMINFO** are undefined at the top and left edges of the screen. Unless **bw** is specified, programs should not try to backspace at the left edge of the screen. To scroll text down, the program should move the cursor to the bottom left corner of the screen and send **ind**. To scroll up, the program should move the cursor to the top of the screen and send **ri**. Both of these capabilities are undefined when the cursor is anywhere else on the screen.

Although moving backwards from the left edge of the screen is not possible unless **bw** is specified, moving forward at the right edge of the screen does not necessarily depend on whether or not **am** is set. If the device has switch

### 3-38 TERMINFO Database

selectable automatic margins, **am** should be specified in the **TERMINFO** file, and initialization strings should turn on this option.

**cuf1.** The local cursor movements should not change the text that they pass over; for example, you would not use **cuf1=\s** because the space would erase the character that it passed over.

**csr.** The cursor position is undefined after using **csr**. Do not specify **csr** on terminals that do not have destructive scroll regions unless all of the following simulate destructive scrolling: **ind**, **ri**, **indn**, **rin**, **dl**, and **dl1**. To find out whether or not the terminal has a destructive scroll region, create a scroll region and place data on the bottom line, move the cursor to the top and do a reverse index (**ri**), followed by a delete line (**dl1**) or index (**ind**). The terminal has destructive scroll regions if the bottom line drops off the bottom of the scrolling region.

The **csr** string can create the effect of insert and delete line.

**cup**, **cuu.** If the device does not have **cup**, (Tektronix 4025, for example), **cud**, **cub**, **cuf**, and **cuu** are useful for moving relative to present position. Sometimes absolute-cursor addressing in one dimension (using **vpa** and **hpa**) is faster than the two-parameter specification of **cup** (as with the Hewlett-Packard 2645).

**home.** Since **home** refers to the top left corner of the screen (0,0) and not to memory, the sequence **\EH** on Hewlett-Packard terminals could not be used without losing other features of the terminal. A program should not get to the lower left hand corner by going up with **cuu1** itself from the home position because the effects of **home** cannot be predicted.

**ri**, **ind.** The **ri** and **ind** strings can be used to insert lines at the top or bottom of the screen on terminals that have no true insert/delete line (and may even be faster).

**mir.** A terminal that allows movement within insert mode to delete characters on the same line can specify **mir** to speed up the insertion process. Some terminals, such as Datamedia's, should not specify **mir** because of the way that their insert mode works.

**smcup**, **rmcup.** Some devices may need to be in a special mode to use cursor movement. Some terminals turn off cursor movement when not in use; other terminals, such as the Concept terminal, have cursor addressing relative to memory instead of the screen; so a single screen-sized window must be fixed

into the device for cursor addressing to work properly. Terminals, such as the Tektronix 4025, that have programmable command characters need to set the command character to the one used in **TERMINFO**. The **smcup** and **rmcup** strings start and end programs that use cursor movement.

**xt.** The **xt** capability is used for Teleray terminals that have destructive tabs (turn all characters tabbed over to blanks) and have an odd standout mode that requires using insert and delete to change text from standout back to normal instead of typing over the text.

## **Edit Capabilities**

Table 3-13 lists the capabilities used for inserting and deleting text on terminals. Following the table are more detailed descriptions of the following capabilities:

- **ich1**
- **in**
- **ip**

**Table 3-13. Editing Capabilities**

| Capability | Variable           | Description                                                                                             |
|------------|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| clear=     | clear_screen       | Clear screen                                                                                            |
| dch=       | parm_dch           | Delete #1 chars                                                                                         |
| dch1=      | delete_character   | Delete character                                                                                        |
| dl=        | parm_delete_line   | Delete #1 lines (only from first column on line)                                                        |
| dl1=       | delete_line        | Delete current line (only from first position on line)                                                  |
| ech=       | erase_ch           | Clear from current position to end of screen                                                            |
| el=        | clr_eol            | Clear from current position to end of line, leaving the cursor in the original position                 |
| el1=       | clr_bol            | Clear from current position to beginning of line inclusive, leaving the cursor in the original position |
| ich=       | parm_ich           | Insert #1 blank characters                                                                              |
| ich1=      | insert_character   | Insert character                                                                                        |
| il=        | parm_insert_line   | Add #1 new blank lines (only from first column line)                                                    |
| il1=       | insert_line        | Add new blank line above cursor (only from first column on line)                                        |
| in         | insert_null_glitch | Insert mode distinguishes nulls                                                                         |

**Table 3-13. Editing Capabilities (continued)**

| Capability   | Variable                 | Description                               |
|--------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <b>ip=</b>   | <b>insert_padding</b>    | Insert pad after character inserted       |
| <b>rmdc=</b> | <b>exit_delete_mode</b>  | End delete mode                           |
| <b>rmir=</b> | <b>exit_insert_mode</b>  | End insert mode                           |
| <b>rmp=</b>  | <b>char_padding</b>      | Like <b>ip</b> , but when in replace mode |
| <b>smdc=</b> | <b>enter_delete_mode</b> | Delete mode (enter)                       |
| <b>smir=</b> | <b>enter_insert_mode</b> | Insert mode (enter)                       |

### Detailed Descriptions

More detailed descriptions are provided below for the following capabilities:

- **ich1**
- **in**
- **ip**

**ich1.** Most characters with a true insert mode do not require **ich1** to be specified; specify **ich1** for any terminal that requires a sequence to be sent before a character can be inserted. (Do not specify both **smir** and **ich1** unless the terminal must be placed in insert mode and must be sent a character before insertion).

**in.** If the terminal distinguishes between blank characters and untyped positions (for example, local cursor movements) **in** should be specified. To find out, clear the screen, type a few characters, press a cursor key, and type a few more characters. Put the cursor before the first set of characters and put the terminal in insert mode. If the first set of characters shifts to the second and then moves onto the next line as you insert more characters, the terminal should be described by **in**.

**ip.** In addition to post-insert padding, **ip** can be used for any sequence that has to be sent after a character is inserted.

## 3-42 TERMINFO Database

## Attribute Capabilities

Table 3-14 lists the capabilities used to control attributes on the terminal. For example, attribute capabilities include those to manipulate bold, underline, and color.

**Table 3-14. Attribute Capabilities**

| Capability | Variable                 | Description                                       |
|------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| bce        | back_color_erase         | Screen erased with background color               |
| blink=     | enter_blink_mode         | Turn on blinking                                  |
| bold=      | enter_bold_mode          | Turn on bold (extra bright) mode                  |
| colors#    | max_colors               | Maximum number of colors on the screen            |
| dim=       | enter_dim_mode           | Turn on half-bright mode                          |
| hls        | hue_lightness_saturation | Terminal uses only HLS color notation (Tektronix) |
| initc=     | initialize_color         | Initialize the definition of color                |
| initp=     | initialize_pair          | Initialize color pair                             |
| invis=     | enter_secure_mode        | Turn on blank mode (characters invisible)         |
| ncv#       | no_color_video           | Video attributes that cannot be used with colors  |
| oc=        | orig_colors              | Set all color (pair)s to the original one         |
| op=        | orig_pair                | Set default color pair to the original one        |
| pairs#     | max_pairs                | Maximum number of color pairs on the screen       |
| prot=      | enter_protected_mode     | Turn on protected mode                            |
| rev=       | enter_reverse_mode       | Turn on reverse video mode                        |
| rmso=      | exit_standout_mode       | End stand out mode                                |
| rmul=      | exit_underline_mode      | End underscore mode                               |
| scp=       | set_color_pair           | Set current color pair                            |

**Table 3-14. Attribute Capabilities (continued)**

| Capability         | Variable                          | Description                                                     |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>setb=</code> | <code>set_background</code>       | Set current background color                                    |
| <code>setf=</code> | <code>set_foreground</code>       | Set current foreground color                                    |
| <code>sgr=</code>  | <code>set_attributes</code>       | Define the video attributes                                     |
| <code>sgr0=</code> | <code>exit_attribute_mode</code>  | Turn off all attributes                                         |
| <code>sms0=</code> | <code>enter_standout_mode</code>  | Begin stand out mode                                            |
| <code>smul=</code> | <code>enter_underline_mode</code> | Start underscore mode                                           |
| <code>xhp</code>   | <code>ceol_standout_glitch</code> | Standout not erased by overwriting (hp)                         |
| <code>xmc#</code>  | <code>magic_cookie_glitch</code>  | # of blank chars left by <code>sms0</code> or <code>rmso</code> |

## Handling Color

There are two ways terminals handle color. The Tektronix method provides a fixed set of colors that can be used for background or foreground. The Hewlett-Packard method provides color pairs that represent the foreground and background colors together; there is no way to define the foreground and background independent of each other.

The `initc` string is defined for terminals that use the Tektronix method of handling color. The `initc` string requires four arguments: one color number (0 to `color -1`), and three RGB (red, green, blue) values or three HLS colors (hue, lightness, saturation) in the same order specified in the parentheses.

The `initp` string is defined for terminals that use the Hewlett-Packard method of handling color. The `initp` string requires seven parameters: the number of the color pair (0 to `pairs -1`), three RGB values for foreground, and three RGB values for background (each group in the order of red, green, blue).

The `hls` Boolean variable is used to tell the `CURSES init_color( )` routine to convert RGB (red, green, blue) arguments to HLS (hue, lightness, saturation) before sending them to the terminal (for those terminals that only use HLS notation).

## 3-44 TERMINFO Database



Some color terminals replace video attributes with colors. Since these attributes should not be combined with colors, they need to be identified. Information about these attributes are packed into the **ncv** variable.

**ncv Variable.** The nine least significant bits of the **ncv** variable correspond to the video attributes as shown in Table 3-15.

**Table 3-15. ncv Variable**

| Attribute    | Bit Position | Decimal Value |
|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| A_STANDOUT   | 0            | 1             |
| A_UNDERLINE  | 1            | 2             |
| A_REVERSE    | 2            | 4             |
| A_BLINK      | 3            | 8             |
| A_DIM        | 4            | 16            |
| A_BOLD       | 5            | 32            |
| A_INVIS      | 6            | 64            |
| A_PROTECT    | 7            | 128           |
| A_ALTCHARSET | 8            | 256           |

The corresponding **ncv** bit of each attribute that should not be combined with color should be set to one; otherwise, it should be set to zero. The decimal values of the attributes that cannot be used with color are summed, and that sum is packed into the **ncv** variable. For example, if the terminal uses color for standout mode (decimal value 1) and for underlining (decimal value 2), **ncv** would be a value of 3.

### Turning Off Attributes

Always use **sgr0** to turn off video attributes since it is the only way to turn off some attributes like **dim** or **blink**.

Programs using standout mode should exit standout mode (**rmso**) before sending a newline or moving the cursor unless the **msgr** capability is present. (The **msgr** capability specifies that it's safe to move in standout mode.)

### Setting Arbitrary Modes

The **sgr** string describes the sequence to set arbitrary combinations of modes. The **sgr** string takes nine parameters in the following order:

1. standout
2. underline
3. reverse
4. blink
5. dim
6. bold
7. blank
8. protect
9. alternate character set

Each parameter is either zero or non-zero, representing whether the attribute is on or off.

Table 3-16 lists the **sgr** parameters.

**Table 3-16. sgr Parameters**

| tparm | Attribute  |
|-------|------------|
|       | none       |
| p1    | standout   |
| p2    | underline  |
| p3    | reverse    |
| p4    | blink      |
| p5    | dim        |
| p6    | bold       |
| p7    | invis      |
| p8    | protect    |
| p9    | altcharset |

## Tabs and Margins

Table 3-17 lists the capabilities used to control margins and tabs on the terminal.

**Table 3-17. Margins and Tabs**

| Capability          | Variable                            | Description                                    |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cbt=</code>   | <code>back_tab</code>               | Back tab                                       |
| <code>ht=</code>    | <code>tab</code>                    | Tab to next eight space hardware tab stop      |
| <code>hts=</code>   | <code>set_tab</code>                | Set a tab in all rows, current column          |
| <code>it#</code>    | <code>init_tabs</code>              | Number of spaces between initial tabs          |
| <code>mgc=</code>   | <code>clear_margins</code>          | Clear all margins top, bottom,                 |
| <code>smgb=</code>  | <code>set_bottom_margin</code>      | Set bottom margin at current line              |
| <code>smgbp=</code> | <code>set_bottom_margin_parm</code> | Set bottom margin at line #1 or #2 from bottom |
| <code>smgl=</code>  | <code>set_left_margin</code>        | Set left margin at current column              |
| <code>smglp=</code> | <code>set_left_margin_parm</code>   | Set left (right) margin at column #1 (#2)      |
| <code>smgr=</code>  | <code>set_right_margin</code>       | Set right margin at current column             |
| <code>smgrp=</code> | <code>set_right_margin_parm</code>  | Set right margin at column #1                  |
| <code>smgt=</code>  | <code>set_top_margin</code>         | Set top margin at current line                 |
| <code>smgtp=</code> | <code>set_top_margin_parm</code>    | Set top (bottom) margin at line #1 (#2)        |
| <code>tbc=</code>   | <code>clear_all_tabs</code>         | Clear all tab stops                            |

If tabs are expanded by the computer rather than sent to the device, by convention, `ht` and `cbt` are not used because the user may not have the tabs correctly set.

If the sequence to set tabs cannot be described adequately with `tbc` and `hts`, it can be described with `is2` or `if`.

### 3-48 TERMINFO Database

The `it` string is normally used by `tputs init` to determine whether to set the mode for hardware expansion and whether to set the tabs.

## **Terminal Key Capabilities**

Table 3-18 lists the capabilities used to describe keys on the terminal.

**Table 3-18. Terminal Key Capabilities**

| Capability         | Variable      | Description                                    |
|--------------------|---------------|------------------------------------------------|
| k_keyname=         | See Table 3-9 | See Table 3-9                                  |
| km                 | has_meta_key  | Terminal has meta key (shift, sets parity bit) |
| lab_function_name= | See Table 3-9 | See Table 3-9                                  |
| lf0=               | lab_f0        | Labels on function key f0 if not f0            |
| lf1=               | lab_f1        | Labels on function key f1 if not f1            |
| lf2=               | lab_f2        | Labels on function key f2 if not f2            |
| lf3=               | lab_f3        | Labels on function key f3 if not f3            |
| lf4=               | lab_f4        | Labels on function key f4 if not f4            |
| lf5=               | lab_f5        | Labels on function key f5 if not f5            |
| lf6=               | lab_f6        | Labels on function key f6 if not f6            |
| lf7=               | lab_f7        | Labels on function key f7 if not f7            |
| lf8=               | lab_f8        | Labels on function key f8 if not f8            |
| lf9=               | lab_f9        | Labels on function key f9 if not f9            |
| lf10=              | lab_f10       | Labels on function key f10 if not f10          |
| pfkey=             | pkey_key      | Prog funct key #1 to type string #2            |
| pfloc=             | pkey_local    | Prog funct key #1 to execute string #2         |
| pfx=               | pkey_xmit     | Prog funct key #1 to xmit string #2            |
| rfi=               | req_for_input | Send next input character (for ptys)           |
| rmkx=              | meta_off      | Turn off meta mode                             |
| smkx=              | keypad_xmit   | Put terminal in keypad transmit mode           |
| smm=               | meta_on       | Turn on meta mode (8th bit)                    |

---

**Note** Refer back to Table 3-9 for a complete list of all the key capabilities.

---

Key capabilities describe keypads that transmit sequences of characters when keys are pressed. Keypads that work only in local mode cannot be described. The keypad is assumed to always transmit; if the transmit of keys can be turned on or off, this should be specified with **smkx** and **rmkx**, respectively.

If the first 11 function keys have labels other than the default **f0** through **f10**, they can be described using **lf0** through **lf10**. If the keypad has a 3 by 3 array of keys that includes the four arrow keys, the other keys can be described as **ka1**, **ka3**, **kb2**, **kc1**, and **kc3** as shown in the diagram below.

|            |            |            |
|------------|------------|------------|
| <b>ka1</b> | ▲          | <b>ka3</b> |
| ◀          | <b>kb2</b> | ▶          |
| <b>kc1</b> | ▼          | <b>kc3</b> |

## Miscellaneous Capabilities

Table 3-19 lists the capabilities that do not fit into any of the previous categories.

**Table 3-19. Miscellaneous Capabilities**

| Capability    | Variable                | Description                                          |
|---------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>civis=</b> | <b>cursor_invisible</b> | Make cursor invisible                                |
| <b>cnorm=</b> | <b>cursor_normal</b>    | Make cursor appear normal (undo <b>cvvis/civis</b> ) |
| <b>cvvis=</b> | <b>cursor_visible</b>   | Make cursor very visible                             |
| <b>defc=</b>  | <b>define_char</b>      | Define a character in a character set                |
| <b>dsl=</b>   | <b>dis_status_line</b>  | Disable status line                                  |
| <b>enacs=</b> | <b>ena_acs</b>          | Enable alternate character set                       |



**Table 3-19. Miscellaneous Capabilities (continued)**

| Capability | Variable               | Description                                               |
|------------|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| flash=     | flash_screen           | Visible bell (may not move cursor)                        |
| ff=        | form_feed              | Hardcopy terminal page eject                              |
| fsl=       | from_status_line       | Return from status line                                   |
| lh#        | label_height           | # rows in each label                                      |
| lw#        | label_width            | # columns in each label                                   |
| nlab#      | num_labels             | # of labels on screen (start at 1)                        |
| pln=       | plab_norm              | Prog label #1 to show string #2                           |
| rbim=      | stop_bit_image         | Stop printing bit image graphics                          |
| rcsd=      | stop_char_set_def      | Stop definition of character set                          |
| rep=       | repeat_char            | Repeat character #1 #2 times                              |
| rmacs=     | exit_alt_charset_mode  | End alternate character set                               |
| rmln=      | label_off              | Turn off soft labels                                      |
| sbim=      | start_bit_image        | Start printing bit image graphics                         |
| scs=       | select_char_set        | Select character set                                      |
| scsd=      | start_char_set_def     | Start definition of character set                         |
| smacs=     | enter_alt_charset_mode | Start alternate character set                             |
| smln=      | label_on               | Turn on soft labels                                       |
| tsl=       | to_status_line         | Go to status line                                         |
| use=       | N/A                    | Read capabilities from entry                              |
| wind=      | set_window             | Current window is lines #1 - #2 cols #3 - #4              |
| wsl#       | width_status_line      | # columns in status line (if different from <i>cols</i> ) |

The `fs1` string must leave the cursor in the same position as it was before `ts1`. If necessary, this can be done by including `sc` and `rc` in the `fs1` and `ts1` strings.

The `wind` string defines a window that all commands affect as part of memory. It takes four arguments: starting lines in memory, ending lines in memory, starting columns in memory, and ending columns in memory.

### Capabilities Sorted by Variable Name

The following tables list all of the capabilities by variable name (instead of `TERMINFO` capability name as was done previously) for ease of reference.

Table 3-20 lists the Boolean capabilities, Table 3-21 lists the numeric capabilities, and Table 3-22 lists the string capabilities.

## Boolean Capabilities

Table 3-20 lists the Boolean capabilities.

**Table 3-20. Boolean Capabilities**

| Variable                 | TInfo | TCap | Description                                          |
|--------------------------|-------|------|------------------------------------------------------|
| auto_left_margin         | bw    | bw   | cub1 wraps from column 0 to last column              |
| auto_right_margin        | am    | am   | Terminal has automatic margins                       |
| back_color_erase         | bce   | be   | Screen erased with background color                  |
| can_change               | ccc   | cc   | Terminal can redefine existing color                 |
| ceol_standout_glitch     | xhp   | xs   | Standout not erased by overwriting (hp)              |
| col_addr_glitch          | xhpa  | YA   | Only positive motion for hpa/mhpa capabilities       |
| cpi_changes_res          | cpix  | YF   | Changing character pitch changes resolution          |
| cr_cancels_micro_mode    | crxm  | YB   | Using cr turns off micro mode                        |
| dest_tabs_magic_smsc     | xt    | xt   | Tabs destructive, magic smsc character (Telera 1061) |
| eat_newline_glitch       | xenl  | xn   | Newline ignored after 80 columns (Concept)           |
| erase_overstrike         | eo    | eo   | Terminal can erase overstrikes with a blank          |
| generic_type             | gn    | gn   | Generic line type (for example, dialup, switch)      |
| hard_copy                | hc    | hc   | Hardcopy terminal                                    |
| hard_cursor              | chts  | HC   | Cursor is hard to see                                |
| has_meta_key             | km    | km   | Terminal has meta key (shift, sets parity bit)       |
| has_print_wheel          | daisy | YC   | Printer needs operator to change character set       |
| has_status_line          | hs    | hs   | Terminal has extra status line                       |
| hue_lightness_saturation | hls   | hl   | Terminal uses only HLS color notation (Tektronix)    |

**Table 3-20. Boolean Capabilities (continued)**

| Variable               | TInfo | TCap | Description                                    |
|------------------------|-------|------|------------------------------------------------|
| insert_null_glitch     | in    | in   | Insert mode distinguishes nulls                |
| lpi_changes_res        | lpix  | YG   | Changing line pitch changes resolution         |
| memory_above           | da    | da   | Display may be retained                        |
| amemory_below          | db    | db   | Display may be retained below the screen       |
| move_insert_mode       | mir   | mi   | Safe to move in insert mode                    |
| move_standout_mode     | msgr  | ms   | Safe to move in standout mode                  |
| needs_xon_xoff         | nxon  | nx   | Padding will not work, XON/XOFF required       |
| no_esc_ctlc            | xsbc  | xb   | Beehive (f1=escape, f2=ctrl C)                 |
| no_pad_char            | npc   | NP   | Pad character does not exist                   |
| non_rev_rmcup          | nrrmc | NR   | smcup does not reverse rmcup                   |
| over_strike            | os    | os   | Terminal overstrikes                           |
| prtr_silent            | mc5i  | 5i   | Printer will not echo on screen                |
| row_addr_glitch        | xvpa  | YD   | Only positive motion for vpa/mvpa capabilities |
| semi_auto_right_margin | sam   | YE   | Printing in last column causes cr              |
| status_line_esc_ok     | eslok | es   | Escape can be used on the status line          |
| tilde_glitch           | hz    | hz   | Hazeltine: cannot print tilde (~)              |
| transparent_underline  | ul    | ul   | Underline character overstrikes                |
| xon_xoff               | xon   | xo   | Terminal uses XON/XOFF handshaking             |

## Numeric Capabilities

Table 3-21 lists the numeric capabilities.

**Table 3-21. Numeric Capabilities**

| Variable         | TInfo | TCap | Description                                   |
|------------------|-------|------|-----------------------------------------------|
| buffer_capacity  | bufsz | Ya   | Number of bytes buffered before printing      |
| columns          | cols  | co   | Number of columns in a line                   |
| dot_horz_spacing | spinh | Yc   | Spacing of dots horizontally in dots per inch |
| dot_vert_spacing | spinv | Yb   | Spacing of pins vertically in pins per inch   |
| init_tabs        | it    | it   | Number of spaces between initial tabs         |
| label_height     | lh    | lh   | Number of rows in each label                  |
| label_width      | lw    | lw   | Number of columns in each label               |
| lines            | lines | li   | Number of lines on screen or page             |

**Table 3-21. Numeric Capabilities (continued)**

| Variable             | TInfo  | TCap | Description                                      |
|----------------------|--------|------|--------------------------------------------------|
| lines_of_memory      | lm     | lm   | Lines of memory if > 0; 0 means unfixed          |
| magic_cookie_glitch  | xmc    | sg   | Number of blank chars left by smso or rmso       |
| max_colors           | colors | Co   | Maximum number of colors on the screen           |
| max_micro_address    | maddr  | Yd   | Maximum value in micro_ ... _address             |
| max_micro_jump       | mjump  | Ye   | Maximum value in parm_ ... _micro                |
| max_pairs            | pairs  | pa   | Maximum number of color pairs on the screen      |
| micro_col_size       | mcs    | Yf   | Character step size when in micro mode           |
| micro_line_size      | mls    | Yg   | Line step size when in micro mode                |
| no_color_video       | ncv    | NC   | Video attributes that cannot be used with colors |
| num_labels           | nlab   | Nl   | Number of labels on screen (start at 1)          |
| number_of_pins       | npins  | yH   | Number of pins in print-head                     |
| output_res_char      | orc    | Yi   | Horz. res. in units per character                |
| output_res_horz_inch | orhi   | Yk   | Horz. res. in units per inch                     |
| output_res_line      | orl    | Yj   | Vert. res. in units per line                     |
| output_res_vert_inch | orvi   | Yl   | Vert. res. in units per inch                     |
| padding_baud_rate    | pb     | pb   | Lowest baud rate where cr/nl padding needed      |
| virtual_terminal     | vt     | vt   | Virtual terminal number (CB/UNIX)                |
| wide_char_size       | widcs  | Yn   | Character step size when in double wide mode     |
| width_status_line    | wsl    | ws   | Number of columns in status line                 |

## **String Capabilities**

Table 3-22 lists the string capabilities.

**Table 3-22. String Capabilities**

| Variable             | TInfo | TCap | Description                                      |
|----------------------|-------|------|--------------------------------------------------|
| N/A                  | use   | tc   | Read capabilities from entry                     |
| acs_chars            | acsc  | ac   | Graphics character set pairs aAbBcC - defn=vt100 |
| back_tab             | cbt   | bt   | Back tab                                         |
| bell                 | bel   | bl   | Produce audible signal (bell or beep)            |
| carriage_return      | cr    | cr   | Move cursor to left edge of screen               |
| change_char_pitch    | cpi   | ZA   | Change number of characters per inch             |
| change_line_pitch    | lpi   | ZB   | Change number of lines per inch                  |
| change_res_horz      | chr   | ZC   | Change horizontal resolution                     |
| change_res_vert      | cvr   | ZD   | Change vertical resolution                       |
| change_scroll_region | csr   | cs   | Change to lines #1 through #2 (vt100)            |
| char_padding         | rmp   | rP   | Like ip, but when in replace mode                |
| char_set_names       | csnm  | Zy   | List of character set names                      |
| clear_all_tabs       | tbc   | ct   | Clear all tab stops                              |
| clear_margins        | mgc   | MC   | Clear all margins top and bottom                 |
| clear_screen         | clear | cl   | Clear screen                                     |
| clr_bol              | el1   | cb   | Clear to beginning of line, inclusive            |
| clr_eol              | el    | ce   | Clear to end of line                             |
| clr_eos              | ed    | cd   | Clear to end of display                          |
| column_address       | hpa   | ch   | Set cursor column                                |
| command_character    | cmdch | CC   | Terminal settable command character in prototype |
| cursor_address       | cup   | cm   | Cursor motion to row #1 col #2                   |

**3-60 TERMINFO Database**



**Table 3-22. String Capabilities (continued)**

| Variable                            | TInfo              | TCap            | Description                                                |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cursor_down</code>            | <code>cu d1</code> | <code>do</code> | Move cursor down one line                                  |
| <code>cursor_home</code>            | <code>home</code>  | <code>ho</code> | Home cursor (if no <code>cup</code> )                      |
| <code>cursor_invisible</code>       | <code>civis</code> | <code>vi</code> | Make cursor invisible                                      |
| <code>cursor_left</code>            | <code>cub1</code>  | <code>le</code> | Move cursor left one space                                 |
| <code>cursor_mem_address</code>     | <code>mrcup</code> | <code>CM</code> | Memory relative cursor addressing                          |
| <code>cursor_normal</code>          | <code>cnorm</code> | <code>ve</code> | Make cursor appear normal (undo <code>cvvis/civis</code> ) |
| <code>cursor_right</code>           | <code>cuf1</code>  | <code>nd</code> | Non-destructive space (cursor right)                       |
| <code>cursor_to_ll</code>           | <code>ll</code>    | <code>ll</code> | Last line, first column (if no <code>cup</code> )          |
| <code>cursor_up</code>              | <code>cuu1</code>  | <code>up</code> | Move cursor up                                             |
| <code>cursor_visible</code>         | <code>cvvis</code> | <code>vs</code> | Make cursor very visible                                   |
| <code>define_char</code>            | <code>defc</code>  | <code>ZE</code> | Define a character in a character set                      |
| <code>delete_character</code>       | <code>dch1</code>  | <code>dc</code> | Delete character                                           |
| <code>delete_line</code>            | <code>dl1</code>   | <code>dl</code> | Delete line                                                |
| <code>dis_status_line</code>        | <code>dsl</code>   | <code>ds</code> | Disable status line                                        |
| <code>down_half_line</code>         | <code>hd</code>    | <code>hd</code> | Half-line down (forward 1/2 linefeed)                      |
| <code>ena_acs</code>                | <code>enacs</code> | <code>eA</code> | Enable alternate character set                             |
| <code>enter_alt_charset_mode</code> | <code>smacs</code> | <code>as</code> | Start alternate character set                              |
| <code>enter_am_mode</code>          | <code>smam</code>  | <code>SA</code> | Turn on automatic margins                                  |
| <code>enter_blink_mode</code>       | <code>blink</code> | <code>mb</code> | Turn on blinking                                           |
| <code>enter_bold_mode</code>        | <code>bold</code>  | <code>md</code> | Turn on bold (extra bright) mode                           |
| <code>enter_ca_mode</code>          | <code>smcup</code> | <code>ti</code> | String to end programs that use <code>cup</code>           |
| <code>enter_delete_mode</code>      | <code>smdc</code>  | <code>dm</code> | Delete mode (enter)                                        |
| <code>enter_dim_mode</code>         | <code>dim</code>   | <code>mh</code> | Turn on half-bright mode                                   |

**Table 3-22. String Capabilities (continued)**

| Variable                  | TInfo | TCap | Description                               |
|---------------------------|-------|------|-------------------------------------------|
| enter_doublewide_mode     | swidm | ZF   | Enable double wide printing               |
| enter_draft_quality       | sdrfq | ZG   | Set draft quality print                   |
| enter_insert_mode         | smir  | im   | Insert mode (enter)                       |
| enter_italics_mode        | sitm  | ZH   | Enable italics                            |
| enter_leftward_mode       | slm   | ZI   | Enable leftward carriage motion           |
| enter_micro_mode          | smicm | ZJ   | Enable micro motion capabilities          |
| enter_near_letter_quality | snlq  | ZK   | Set near-letter quality                   |
| enter_normal_quality      | snrmq | ZL   | Set normal quality print                  |
| enter_protected_mode      | prot  | mp   | Turn on protected mode                    |
| enter_reverse_mode        | rev   | mr   | Turn on reverse video mode                |
| enter_secure_mode         | invis | mk   | Turn on blank mode (characters invisible) |
| enter_shadow_mode         | sshm  | ZM   | Enable shadow printing                    |
| enter_standout_mode       | smso  | so   | Begin stand out mode                      |
| enter_subscript_mode      | ssubm | ZN   | Enable subscript printing                 |
| enter_superscript_mode    | ssupm | ZO   | Enable superscript printing               |
| enter_underline_mode      | smul  | us   | Start underscore mode                     |
| enter_upward_mode         | sum   | ZP   | Enable upward carriage motion             |
| enter_xon_mode            | smxon | SX   | Turn on XON/XOFF handshaking              |
| erase_chars               | ech   | ec   | Erase #1 characters                       |
| exit_alt_charset_mode     | rmacs | ae   | End alternate character set               |
| exit_am_mode              | rmam  | RA   | Turn off automatic margins                |
| exit_attribute_mode       | sgr0  | me   | Turn off all attributes                   |
| exit_ca_mode              | rmcup | te   | String to begin programs that use cup     |

**3-62 TERMINFO Database**

**Table 3-22. String Capabilities (continued)**

| Variable              | TInfo | TCap | Description                               |
|-----------------------|-------|------|-------------------------------------------|
| exit_delete_mode      | rmdc  | ed   | End delete mode                           |
| exit_doublewide_mode  | rwidm | ZQ   | Disable double wide printing              |
| exit_insert_mode      | rmir  | ei   | End insert mode                           |
| exit_italics_mode     | ritm  | ZR   | Disable italics                           |
| exit_leftward_mode    | rlm   | ZS   | Enable rightward (normal) carriage motion |
| exit_micro_mode       | rmicm | ZT   | Disable micro motion capabilities         |
| exit_shadow_mode      | rshm  | ZU   | Disable shadow printing                   |
| exit_standout_mode    | rmso  | se   | End stand out mode                        |
| exit_subscript_mode   | wsubm | ZV   | Disable subscript printing                |
| exit_superscript_mode | rsupm | ZW   | Disable superscript printing              |
| exit_underline_mode   | rmul  | ue   | End underscore mode                       |
| exit_xon_mode         | rmxon | RX   | Turn off XON/XOFF handshaking             |
| flash_screen          | flash | vb   | Visible bell (may not move cursor)        |
| form_feed             | ff    | ff   | Hardcopy terminal page eject              |
| from_status_line      | fsl   | fs   | Return from status line                   |
| init_1string          | is1=  | i1   | Terminal initialization string            |
| init_2string          | is2=  | is   | Terminal initialization string            |
| init_3string          | is3=  | i3   | Terminal initialization string            |
| init_file             | if    | if   | Name of file containing <b>is</b>         |
| init_prog             | ipro  | iP   | Pathname of program for initialization    |
| initialize_color      | initc | Ic   | Initialize the definition of color        |
| initialize_pair       | initp | Ip   | Initialize color pair                     |
| insert_character      | ich1  | ic   | Insert character                          |

**Table 3-22. String Capabilities (continued)**

| Variable       | TInfo   | TCap | Description                                       |
|----------------|---------|------|---------------------------------------------------|
| insert_line    | il1     | a1   | Add new blank line                                |
| insert_padding | ip      | ip   | Insert pad after character inserted               |
| key_a1         | ka1     | K1   | Upper left of keypad                              |
| key_a3         | ka3     | K3   | Upper right of keypad                             |
| key_b2         | kb2     | K2   | Center of keypad                                  |
| key_backspace  | kbs     | kb   | Sent by backspace key                             |
| key_beg        | kbeg    | 01   | Sent by beginning key                             |
| key_btab       | kcbt    | kB   | Sent by BackTab key                               |
| key_c1         | kc1     | K4   | Lower left of keypad                              |
| key_c3         | kc3     | K5   | Lower right of keypad                             |
| key_cancel     | kcan    | 02   | Sent by cancel key                                |
| key_catab      | ktbc    | ka   | Sent by clear-all-tabs key                        |
| key_clear      | kclr    | kC   | Sent by clear screen or erase key                 |
| key_close      | kclo    | 03   | Sent by close key                                 |
| key_command    | kcmd    | 04   | Sent by command key                               |
| key_copy       | kcpy    | 05   | Sent by copy key                                  |
| key_create     | kcreate | 06   | Sent by create key                                |
| key_ctab       | kctab   | kt   | Sent by clear-tab key                             |
| key_dc         | kdch1   | kD   | Sent by delete character key                      |
| key_dl         | kdl1    | kL   | Sent by delete line key                           |
| key_down       | kcud1   | kd   | Sent by terminal down arrow key                   |
| key_eic        | krmir   | kM   | Sent by <b>rmir</b> or <b>smir</b> in insert mode |
| key_end        | kend    | 07   | Sent by end key                                   |

**3-64 TERMINFO Database**

**Table 3-22. String Capabilities (continued)**

| Variable  | TInfo | TCap | Description                        |
|-----------|-------|------|------------------------------------|
| key_enter | kent  | @8   | Sent by enter/send key             |
| key_eol   | kel   | kE   | Sent by clear-to-end-of-line key   |
| key_eos   | ked   | kS   | Sent by clear-to-end-of-screen key |
| key_exit  | kext  | @9   | Sent by exit key                   |
| key_f0    | kf0   | k0   | Sent by function key f0            |
| key_f1    | kf1   | k1   | Sent by function key f1            |
| key_f2    | kf2   | k2   | Sent by function key f2            |
| key_f3    | kf3   | k3   | Sent by function key f3            |
| key_f4    | kf4   | k4   | Sent by function key f4            |
| key_f5    | kf5   | k5   | Sent by function key f5            |
| key_f6    | kf6   | k6   | Sent by function key f6            |
| key_f7    | kf7   | k7   | Sent by function key f7            |
| key_f8    | kf8   | k8   | Sent by function key f8            |
| key_f9    | kf9   | k9   | Sent by function key f9            |
| key_f10   | kf10  | k;   | Sent by function key f10           |
| key_f11   | kf11  | F1   | Sent by function key 11            |
| key_f12   | kf12  | F2   | Sent by function key 12            |
| key_f13   | kf13  | F3   | Sent by function key 13            |
| key_f14   | kf14  | F4   | Sent by function key 14            |
| key_f15   | kf15  | F5   | Sent by function key 15            |
| key_f16   | kf16  | F6   | Sent by function key 16            |
| key_f17   | kf17  | F7   | Sent by function key 17            |
| key_f18   | kf18  | F8   | Sent by function key 18            |

**Table 3-22. String Capabilities (continued)**

| Variable | TInfo | TCap | Description             |
|----------|-------|------|-------------------------|
| key_f19  | kf19  | F9   | Sent by function key 19 |
| key_f20  | kf20  | FA   | Sent by function key 20 |
| key_f21  | kf21  | FB   | Sent by function key 21 |
| key_f22  | kf22  | FC   | Sent by function key 22 |
| key_f23  | kf23  | FD   | Sent by function key 23 |
| key_f24  | kf24  | FE   | Sent by function key 24 |
| key_f25  | kf25  | FF   | Sent by function key 25 |
| key_f26  | kf26  | FG   | Sent by function key 26 |
| key_f27  | kf27  | FH   | Sent by function key 27 |
| key_f28  | kf28  | FI   | Sent by function key 28 |
| key_f29  | kf29  | FJ   | Sent by function key 29 |
| key_f30  | kf30  | FK   | Sent by function key 30 |
| key_f31  | kf31  | FL   | Sent by function key 31 |
| key_f32  | kf32  | FM   | Sent by function key 32 |
| key_f33  | kf33  | FN   | Sent by function key 33 |
| key_f34  | kf34  | FO   | Sent by function key 34 |
| key_f35  | kf35  | FP   | Sent by function key 35 |
| key_f36  | kf36  | FQ   | Sent by function key 36 |
| key_f37  | kf37  | FR   | Sent by function key 37 |
| key_f38  | kf38  | FS   | Sent by function key 38 |
| key_f39  | kf39  | FT   | Sent by function key 39 |
| key_f40  | kf40  | FU   | Sent by function key 40 |
| key_f41  | kf41  | FV   | Sent by function key 41 |

**Table 3-22. String Capabilities (continued)**

| Variable | TInfo | TCap | Description             |
|----------|-------|------|-------------------------|
| key_f42  | kf42  | FW   | Sent by function key 42 |
| key_f43  | kf43  | FX   | Sent by function key 43 |
| key_f44  | kf44  | FY   | Sent by function key 44 |
| key_f45  | kf45  | FZ   | Sent by function key 45 |
| key_f46  | kf46  | Fa   | Sent by function key 46 |
| key_f47  | kf47  | Fb   | Sent by function key 47 |
| key_f48  | kf48  | Fc   | Sent by function key 48 |
| key_f49  | kf49  | Fd   | Sent by function key 49 |
| key_f50  | kf50  | Fe   | Sent by function key 50 |
| key_f51  | kf51  | Ff   | Sent by function key 51 |
| key_f52  | kf52  | Fg   | Sent by function key 52 |
| key_f53  | kf53  | Fh   | Sent by function key 53 |
| key_f54  | kf54  | Fi   | Sent by function key 54 |
| key_f55  | kf55  | Fj   | Sent by function key 55 |
| key_f56  | kf56  | Fk   | Sent by function key 56 |
| key_f57  | kf57  | Fl   | Sent by function key 57 |
| key_f58  | kf58  | Fm   | Sent by function key 58 |
| key_f59  | kf59  | Fn   | Sent by function key 59 |
| key_f60  | kf60  | Fo   | Sent by function key 60 |
| key_f61  | kf61  | Fp   | Sent by function key 61 |
| key_f62  | kf62  | Fq   | Sent by function key 62 |
| key_f63  | kf63  | Fr   | Sent by function key 63 |
| key_find | kfnd  | @0   | Sent by find key        |

**Table 3-22. String Capabilities (continued)**

| Variable      | TInfo | TCap | Description                         |
|---------------|-------|------|-------------------------------------|
| key_help      | khlp  | %1   | Sent by help key                    |
| key_home      | khome | kh   | Sent by home key                    |
| key_ic        | kich1 | kI   | Sent by ins char/enter ins mode key |
| key_il        | kil1  | kA   | Sent by insert line                 |
| key_left      | kcub1 | kL   | Sent by terminal left-arrow key     |
| key_ll        | kll   | kH   | Sent by home-down key (lower left)  |
| key_mark      | kmrk  | %2   | Sent by mark key                    |
| key_message   | kmsg  | %3   | Sent by message key                 |
| key_move      | kmov  | %4   | Sent by move key                    |
| key_next      | knxt  | %5   | Sent by next-object key             |
| key_npage     | knp   | kN   | Sent by next-page key               |
| key_open      | kopn  | %6   | Sent by open key                    |
| key_options   | kopt  | %7   | Sent by options key                 |
| key_ppage     | kpp   | kP   | Sent by previous-page key           |
| key_previous  | kprv  | %8   | Sent by previous-object key         |
| key_print     | kpri  | %9   | Sent by print or copy key           |
| key_redo      | krdo  | %0   | Sent by redo key                    |
| key_reference | kref  | &1   | Sent by reference key               |
| key_refresh   | krfr  | &2   | Sent by refresh key                 |
| key_replace   | krpl  | &3   | Sent by replace key                 |
| key_restart   | krst  | &4   | Sent by restart key                 |
| key_resume    | kres  | &5   | Sent by resume key                  |
| key_right     | kcuf1 | kr   | Sent by terminal right arrow key    |



**Table 3-22. String Capabilities (continued)**

| Variable      | TInfo | TCap | Description                     |
|---------------|-------|------|---------------------------------|
| key_save      | ksav  | &6   | Sent by save key                |
| key_sbeg      | kBEG  | &9   | Sent by shift-beginning key     |
| key_scancel   | kCAN  | &0   | Sent by shift-cancel key        |
| key_scommand  | kCMD  | *1   | Sent by shift-command key       |
| key_scopy     | kCPY  | *2   | Sent by shift-copy key          |
| key_screate   | kCRT  | *3   | Sent by shift-create key        |
| key_sdc       | kDC   | *4   | Sent by shift-delete-char key   |
| key_sdl       | kDL   | *5   | Sent by shift-delete-line key   |
| key_select    | kslt  | *6   | Sent by select key              |
| key_send      | kEND  | *7   | Sent by shift-end key           |
| key_seol      | kEOL  | *8   | Sent by shift-eol key           |
| key_sexit     | kEXT  | *9   | Sent by shift-exit key          |
| key_sf        | kind  | kF   | Sent by scroll-forward/down key |
| key_sfind     | kFND  | *0   | Sent by shift-find key          |
| key_shelp     | kHLP  | #1   | Sent by shift-help key          |
| key_shome     | kHOM  | #2   | Sent by shift-home key          |
| key_sic       | kIC   | #3   | Sent by shift-insert-char key   |
| key_sleft     | kLFT  | #4   | Sent by shift-left key          |
| key_smessage  | kMSG  | %a   | Sent by shift-message key       |
| key_smove     | kMOV  | %b   | Sent by shift-move key          |
| key_snext     | kNXT  | %c   | Sent by shift-next key          |
| key_soptions  | kOPT  | %d   | Sent by shift-options key       |
| key_sprevious | kPRV  | %e   | Sent by shift-prev key          |

**Table 3-22. String Capabilities (continued)**

| Variable     | TInfo | TCap | Description                           |
|--------------|-------|------|---------------------------------------|
| key_sprint   | kPRT  | %f   | Sent by shift-print key               |
| key_sr       | kri   | kR   | Sent by scroll-backward/up key        |
| key_sredo    | kRDO  | %g   | Sent by shift-redo key                |
| key_sreplace | kRPL  | %h   | Sent by shift-replace key             |
| key_sright   | kRIT  | %i   | Sent by shift-right key               |
| key_srsume   | kRES  | %j   | Sent by shift-resume key              |
| key_ssave    | kSAV  | !1   | Sent by shift-save key                |
| key_ssuspend | kSPD  | !2   | Sent by shift-suspend key             |
| key_stab     | khts  | kT   | Sent by set-tab key                   |
| key_sundo    | kUND  | !3   | Sent by shift-undo key                |
| key_suspend  | kspd  | &7   | Sent by suspend key                   |
| key_undo     | kund  | &8   | Sent by undo key                      |
| key_up       | kcuu1 | ku   | Sent by terminal up-arrow key         |
| keypad_local | rmkx  | ke   | Out of keypad transmit mode           |
| keypad_xmit  | smkx  | ks   | Put terminal in keypad transmit mode  |
| lab_f0       | lf0   | 10   | Labels on function key f0 if not f0   |
| lab_f1       | lf1   | 11   | Labels on function key f1 if not f1   |
| lab_f10      | lf10  | 1a   | Labels on function key f10 if not f10 |
| lab_f2       | lf2   | 12   | Labels on function key f2 if not f2   |
| lab_f3       | lf3   | 13   | Labels on function key f3 if not f3   |
| lab_f4       | lf4   | 14   | Labels on function key f4 if not f4   |
| lab_f5       | lf5   | 15   | Labels on function key f5 if not f5   |
| lab_f6       | lf6   | 16   | Labels on function key f6 if not f6   |

**3-70 TERMINFO Database**

**Table 3-22. String Capabilities (continued)**

| Variable             | TInfo  | TCap | Description                                           |
|----------------------|--------|------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| lab_f7               | lf7    | 17   | Labels on function key f7 if not f7                   |
| lab_f8               | lf8    | 18   | Labels on function key f8 if not f8                   |
| lab_f9               | lf9    | 19   | Labels on function key f9 if not f9                   |
| label_off            | rmln   | LF   | Turn off soft labels                                  |
| label_on             | smln   | LO   | Turn on soft labels                                   |
| meta_off             | rmm    | mo   | Turn off meta mode                                    |
| meta_on              | smm    | mm   | Turn on meta mode (8th bit)                           |
| micro_column_address | mhpa   | ZY   | Like <code>column_address</code> for micro adjustment |
| micro_down           | mcud1  | ZZ   | Like <code>cursor_down</code> for micro adjustment    |
| micro_left           | mcub1  | Za   | Like <code>cursor_left</code> for micro adjustment    |
| micro_right          | mcuf1  | Zb   | Like <code>cursor_right</code> for micro adjustment   |
| micro_row_address    | mvp    | Zc   | Like <code>row_address</code> for micro adjustment    |
| micro_up             | mcuu1  | Zd   | Like <code>cursor_up</code> for micro adjustment      |
| newline              | nel    | nw   | Produces newline (behaves like cr followed by lf)     |
| order_of_pins        | porder | Ze   | Matches software bits to print-head pins              |
| orig_colors          | oc     | oc   | Set all color(pair)s to the original ones             |
| orig_pair            | op     | op   | Set default color pair to the original one            |
| pad_char             | pad    | pc   | Pad character (rather than null)                      |
| parm_dch             | dch    | DC   | Delete #1 characters                                  |
| parm_delete_line     | dl     | DL   | Delete #1 lines                                       |
| parm_down_cursor     | cud    | D0   | Move cursor down #1 lines                             |
| parm_down_micro      | mcud   | Zf   | Like <code>parm_down_cursor</code>                    |
| parm_ich             | ich    | IC   | Insert #1 blank characters                            |

**Table 3-22. String Capabilities (continued)**

| Variable          | TInfo | TCap | Description                             |
|-------------------|-------|------|-----------------------------------------|
| parm_index        | indn  | SF   | Scroll forward #1 lines                 |
| parm_insert_line  | il    | AL   | Add #1 new blank lines                  |
| parm_left_cursor  | cub   | LE   | Move cursor left #1 spaces              |
| parm_left_micro   | mcub  | Zg   | Like parm_left_cursor                   |
| parm_right_cursor | cuf   | RI   | Move cursor right #1 spaces             |
| parm_right_micro  | mcuf  | Zh   | Like parm_right_cursor                  |
| parm_rindex       | rin   | SR   | Scroll backward #1 lines                |
| parm_up_cursor    | cuu   | UP   | Move cursor up #1 lines                 |
| parm_up_micro     | mcuu  | Zi   | Like parm_up_cursor                     |
| pkey_key          | pfkey | pk   | Prog funct key #1 to type string #2     |
| pkey_local        | pfloc | pl   | Prog funct key #1 to execute string #2  |
| pkey_xmit         | pfx   | px   | Prog funct key #1 to xmit string #2     |
| plab_norm         | pln   | pn   | Prog label #1 to show string #2         |
| print_screen      | mc0   | ps   | Print contents of the screen            |
| prtr_non          | mc5p  | p0   | Turn on the printer for #1 bytes        |
| prtr_off          | mc4   | pf   | Turn off the printer                    |
| prtr_on           | mc5   | po   | Turn on the printer                     |
| repeat_char       | rep   | rp   | Repeat char #1 #2 times                 |
| req_for_input     | rfi   | RF   | Send next input character (for ptys)    |
| reset_1string     | rs1   | r1   | Reset terminal completely to sane modes |
| reset_2string     | rs2   | r2   | Reset terminal completely to sane modes |
| reset_3string     | rs3   | r3   | Reset terminal completely to sane modes |
| reset_file        | rf    | rf   | Name of file containing reset string    |

**3-72 TERMINFO Database**

**Table 3-22. String Capabilities (continued)**

| Variable               | TInfo | TCap | Description                                    |
|------------------------|-------|------|------------------------------------------------|
| restore_cursor         | rc    | rc   | Restore cursor to position of last <b>sc</b>   |
| row_address            | vpa   | cv   | Like <b>hpa</b> but sets row                   |
| save_cursor            | sc    | sc   | Save cursor position                           |
| scroll_forward         | ind   | sf   | Scroll text up                                 |
| scroll_reverse         | ri    | ri   | Scroll text down                               |
| select_char_set        | scs   | Zj   | Select character set                           |
| set_attributes         | sgr   | sa   | Define the video attributes                    |
| set_background         | setb  | Sb   | Set current background color                   |
| set_bottom_margin      | smgb  | Zk   | Set bottom margin at current line              |
| set_bottom_margin_parm | smgbp | Zl   | Set bottom margin at line #1 or #2 from bottom |
| set_color_pair         | scp   | sp   | Set current color pair                         |
| set_foreground         | setf  | Sf   | Set current foreground color                   |
| set_left_margin        | smgl  | ML   | Set left margin at current column              |
| set_left_margin_parm   | smglp | Zm   | Set left (right) margin at column #1 (#2)      |
| set_right_margin       | smgr  | MR   | Set right margin at current column             |
| set_right_margin_parm  | smgrp | Zn   | Set right margin at column #1                  |
| set_tab                | hts   | st   | Set a tab in all rows, current column          |
| set_top_margin         | smgt  | Zo   | Set top margin at current line                 |
| set_top_margin_parm    | smgtp | Zp   | Set top (bottom) margin at line #1 (#2)        |
| set_window             | wind  | wi   | Current window is lines #1 - #2 cols #3 - #4   |
| start_bit_image        | sbim  | Zq   | Start printing bit image graphics              |
| start_char_set_def     | scsd  | Zr   | Start definition of character set              |
| stop_bit_image         | rbim  | Zs   | Stop printing bit image graphics               |

**Table 3-22. String Capabilities (continued)**

| Variable               | TInfo | TCap | Description                            |
|------------------------|-------|------|----------------------------------------|
| stop_char_set_def      | rcsd  | Zt   | Stop definition of character set       |
| subscript_characters   | subcs | Zu   | List of “subscriptable” characters     |
| superscript_characters | supcs | Zv   | List of “superscript-able” characters  |
| tab                    | ht    | ta   | Tab to next 8-space hardware tab stop  |
| these_cause_cr         | docr  | Zw   | Printing any of these chars causes cr  |
| to_status_line         | tsl   | ts   | Go to status line                      |
| underline_char         | uc    | uc   | Underscore one char and move past it   |
| up_half_line           | hu    | hu   | Half-line up (reverse 1/2 linefeed)    |
| xoff_character         | xoffc | XF   | XOFF character                         |
| xon_character          | xonc  | XN   | XON character                          |
| zero_motion            | zerom | Zx   | No motion for the subsequent character |

---

## TERMINFO Compiled File

The TERM file is the compiled `terminfo` source file.

### Description

The TERM file is compiled from `terminfo` source files using the `tic` utility. Compiled files are organized in a directory hierarchy under the first letter of each terminal name. For example, the `vt100` file would have the following pathname.

```
/usr/lib/terminfo/v/vt100
```

The compiled files are read by the CURSES routine `setupterm()`.

The following illustration shows the content and order of the compiled file:

### 3-74 TERMINFO Database

```

<magic number><name section size><Boolean section size><number section size>
<string section size><string table size><name section><Boolean section>[0]
<number section><string section><string table>

```

The first six items in the file make up the header.

The header consists of six short integers, stored using VAX/PDP style byte swapping (least-significant byte first). The integers are as follows:

1. magic number (octal 0432)
2. the size, in bytes, of the names section
3. the number of bytes in the Boolean section
4. the number of short integers in the numbers section
5. the number of offsets (short integers) in the strings section
6. the size, in bytes, of the string table

Following the header is the terminal name section that consists of the first line of the **terminfo** definition terminated with an ASCII NUL character.

The terminal name section is followed by the Boolean section, number section, string section, and string table.

The Boolean section consists of a byte for each flag, showing whether the flag is absent, present, or cancelled (a value of 0, 1, or 2 respectively). If necessary, a null byte is inserted between the Boolean and number sections so that the number section begins on an even byte boundary. All short integers are aligned on a short word boundary.

Each capability in the number section is made up of two bytes and stored as a short integer. A value of -1 or -2 indicates a missing or cancelled capability.

Similarly, each capability in the string section is made up of two bytes and stored as a short integer. The value is an offset from the string table. A value of -1 or -2 indicates a missing or cancelled capability. Parameter and padding information is stored in its uninterpreted form. Control or other characters using special notation (^x, \c) are stored in their interpreted form.

The final section of the file is the string table that contains the values of each string in the string section, followed by a null character.

---

|             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note</b> | The <code>setupterm()</code> routine may expect a different set of capabilities than appears in the file. Unexpected or missing entries may result when the database has been updated since the <code>CURSES</code> library was last compiled, or when the program is recompiled more recently than the database. |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

---

The first of the following two examples shows a `terminfo` file for a dumb terminal; the second example shows an octal dump of the `TERM` file.

```
000000 032 001 005 \0 % \0.036 \0 c 001 \r \0 d u m b
000020 \0 \0 001 \0 \0 \0 \0 \0 \0 \0 \0 \0 \0 \0 \0
000040 \0 \0 \0 \0 \0 \0 \0 \0 \0 \0 \0 \0 \0 \0 e \0 \0
000060 \0 \0 \0 \0 \0 \0 \0 P \0 377 377 377 377 377 377 377
000100 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 377
*
000160 377 377 377 377 005 \0 \a \0 377 377 377 377 377 377 377
000200 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 \t \0 377 377 377 377 377
000220 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 377
*
000560 377 377 377 377 \v \0 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 377
000600 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 377
*
001460 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 377 d u m b \0 \a \0 \r
001500 \0 \n \0 \n \0
001505
```

## Related Information

`tic` utility, `untic` utility

*MPE/iX Reference Supplement (32650-90353)*

## 3-76 TERMINFO Database



## **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to UNIX System V

## **Portability**

UNIX System V

## CURSES

---

The **CURSES** screen management package consists of routines and macros for creating and modifying input and output to a terminal screen. **CURSES** contains routines for creating windows, highlighting text, writing to the screen, reading from user input, and moving the cursor.

The **CURSES** package is designed to optimize screen update activities. For example, when updating the screen, **CURSES** minimizes the number of characters sent to the terminal to move and update the screen.

**CURSES** is a terminal-independent package, providing a common user interface to a variety of terminal types. Its portability is facilitated by the **TERMINFO** database, which contains a compiled definition of each terminal type. By referring to the database information, **CURSES** gains access to low-level details about individual terminals.

**CURSES** tailors its activities to the terminal type specified by the **TERM** environment variable. The **TERM** environment variable may be set in the MPE/iX shell by entering:

```
export TERM=terminal_name
```

Hewlett-Packard systems default to the **hp2392a** terminal name.

---

## Environment Variables

The following three environment variables are useful, and can be set in the MPE/iX shell:

- **TERMINFO**
- **COLUMNS**
- **LINES**

Refer to the *MPE/iX Shell and Utilities User's Guide* (36431-90002) for more information on the MPE/iX shell.

### TERMINFO Environment Variable

If you have an alternate Terminfo database containing terminal types that are not available in the system default database `/usr/lib/terminfo`, you can specify the **TERMINFO** environment variable to point to this alternate database. For example:

```
export TERMINFO=/usr/lib/specialinfo
```

This path specifies the location of the alternate compiled **TERMINFO** database, whose structure consists of directory names 0 to 9 and a to z, each containing compiled terminal definition files for names beginning with the directory letter or number.

The alternate database specified by **TERMINFO** is examined before the system default database. If the terminal type specified by **TERM** cannot be found in either database, the default terminal type **hp2392a** is assumed.

### COLUMNS Environment Variable

The **COLUMNS** environment variable is used to set the window width.

For example, to specify a window width smaller than your screen width in situations where your communications line is slow, set the **COLUMNS** environment variable to the number of vertical columns that you want between the left and right margins.

```
export COLUMNS=number
```

## 4-2 CURSES

The *number* of columns may be set to a number smaller than the screen size; however, if set larger than the screen or window width, the results are undefined. Currently, the largest screen width possible is 132 columns.

The value set using the **COLUMNS** environment variable takes precedence over the value normally used for the terminal.

## **LINES Environment Variable**

The **LINES** environment variable is used to set the window height.

For example, to specify a window height smaller than your current screen height in situations where your communications line is slow, override the **LINES** environment variable by setting it to a smaller number of horizontal lines.

```
export LINES=number
```

The *number* of lines may be set to a number smaller than the screen height; however, if set larger than the screen or window height, the results are undefined. Currently, the largest screen height possible is 128 lines.

The value set using the **LINES** environment variable takes precedence over the value normally used for the terminal.

---

## **Implementation Details**

The following routines are not fully implemented:

- `color_pair()`
- `init_color()`
- `init_pair()`
- `napms()`
- `pair_content()`
- `start_color()`

The routines shown in the following table are stubs for the older **TERMCAP** interface and should be replaced by their newer **TERMINFO** counterparts.

| <b>TERMCAP</b>          | <b>TERMINFO</b>          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| <code>tgoto()</code>    | <code>mvcur()</code>     |
| <code>tgetent()</code>  | <code>deleted()</code>   |
| <code>tgetflag()</code> | <code>tigetflag()</code> |
| <code>tgetnum()</code>  | <code>tigetnum()</code>  |
| <code>tgetstr()</code>  | <code>tigetstr()</code>  |

The following routines have known problems:

|                                              |                                             |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <code>halfdelay()</code>                     | improper implementation                     |
| <code>intrflush()</code>                     | missing General Terminal Interface support  |
| <code>nl()</code>                            | cannot be disabled with <code>nonl()</code> |
| <code>nonl()</code>                          | cannot be disabled with <code>nl()</code>   |
| <code>nodelay()</code>                       | non-blocking input situations               |
| <code>nocbreak()</code>                      | undefined                                   |
| <code>scanw()</code>                         | undefined                                   |
| <code>typeahead()</code>                     | non-blocking input situations               |
| <code>wtime-</code><br><code>out(w,0)</code> | non-blocking input situations               |

#### **4-4 CURSES**

---

## Global Variables

The global variables defined for **CURSES** are shown in Table 4-1.

**Table 4-1. Definitions of Global Variables**

| Constant             | Description                                  |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <b>COLORS</b>        | Number of colors supported by terminal       |
| <b>COLOR_PAIRS</b>   | Number of color pairs supported by terminal  |
| <b>COLS</b>          | Number of columns supported by terminal      |
| <b>LINES</b>         | Number of lines supported by terminal        |
| <b>boolcodes[ ]</b>  | <b>termcap</b> capability names              |
| <b>boolfnames[ ]</b> | Full C names                                 |
| <b>boolnames[ ]</b>  | <b>terminfo</b> capability names             |
| <b>cur_term</b>      | Current terminal                             |
| <b>curscr</b>        | Current screen image                         |
| <b>numcodes[ ]</b>   | <b>termcap</b> capability codes              |
| <b>numfnames[ ]</b>  | Full C names                                 |
| <b>numfnames[ ]</b>  | <b>terminfo</b> capability codes             |
| <b>stdscr</b>        | Standard screen supplied by <b>initscr()</b> |
| <b>strcodes[ ]</b>   | <b>termcap</b> capability names              |
| <b>strfnames[ ]</b>  | Full C names                                 |
| <b>strnames[ ]</b>   | <b>terminfo</b> capability names             |
| <b>ttytype</b>       | Terminal type                                |

## Implementation Considerations

The `curscr`, `sdscr`, `COLS`, and `LINES` constants are identical to XPG/3. The `COLORS`, `COLOR_PAIRS`, `boolcodes[]`, `boolfnames[]`, `boolnames[]`, `numcodes[]`, `numfnames[]`, `numnames[]`, `strcodes[]`, `strfnames[]`, and `strnames[]` constants are UNIX System V implementations.

## Portability

The `COLORS`, `COLOR_PAIRS`, `boolcodes[]`, `boolfnames[]`, `boolnames[]`, `numcodes[]`, `numfnames[]`, `numnames[]`, `strcodes[]`, `strfnames[]`, and `strnames[]` constants conform to UNIX System V. The `curscr`, `sdscr`, `COLS`, and `LINES` constants conform to HP-UX, UNIX System V, and XPG/3. The `cur_term` and `ttytype` constants conform to HP-UX and UNIX System V.

---

## Descriptions of CURSES Routines

The following section describes the `CURSES` routines. The descriptions are presented in sets of related routines. They are arranged alphabetically by the primary routine name; for example, `addch` is the primary name for the following set of routines:

- `addch`
- `waddch`
- `mvaddch`
- `mvwaddch`

## 4-6 CURSES

---

**addch**  
**waddch**  
**mvaddch**  
**mvwaddch**

The **addch** set of routines is used to add a character (with attributes) to a window.

**Syntax**

```
int addch(chtype ch);
int waddch(WINDOW *win, chtype ch);
int mvaddch(int y, int x, chtype ch);
int mvwaddch(WINDOW *win, int y, int x, chtype ch);
```

**Parameters**

|            |                                                                             |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>ch</i>  | The character/attribute pair to be written to the window.                   |
| <i>win</i> | A pointer to the window in which the character is to be written.            |
| <i>x</i>   | The <i>x</i> (column) coordinate of the character's position in the window. |
| <i>y</i>   | The <i>y</i> (row) coordinate of the character's position in the window.    |

**Return Values**

|     |                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion.                                                                                                                                                                   |
| ERR | An error occurred. An attempt was made to write outside the window boundary or after writing a character, the cursor advanced past the scroll region (and <b>scrollok()</b> is not set). |



## **addch**

### **Description**

A window is made up of foreground and background attributes. All characters except space are part of the foreground. The character and its attributes make up a character/attribute pair defined as a **chtype**. The character is any 16-bit value; the attribute consists of highlighting attributes that affect the appearance of the character on the screen (for example, bold, underline).

Each time that a character, other than a space, is written to a window with **waddch()**, **wprintw()**, or **waddstr()**, a bitwise OR operation is performed between the **chtype** (foreground character with its attributes), the current foreground attributes of the window, and the current background attributes of the window. The current foreground attributes are set with the **wattrset()**, **wattron()**, and **wattroff()** routines; the current background attributes are set with the **wbgdset()** routine.

When spaces are written to the screen, the background character and attributes replace the space. For example, if the background attribute and character is

```
A_UNDERLINE|'*'
```

text written to the window appears underlined, and the spaces appear as underlined asterisks.

After the OR operation, each character written retains the new foreground and background attributes that it has obtained. This allows the character to be copied as is to a window with the **waddchstr()** or **insch()** routines.

The **addch()** routine writes a character to the **stdscr** window at the current cursor position and advances the cursor. The **waddch()** routine performs an identical action, but writes the character to the window specified by *win*. The **mvaddch()** and **mvwaddch()** routines write the character to the position indicated by the *x* (column) and *y* (row) parameters. The **mvaddch()** routine writes the character to the **stdscr** window, while **mvwaddch()** writes the character to the window specified by *win*.

If the character is a newline, carriage return, backspace, or tab, the cursor is moved appropriately. The cursor is moved to the next tab stop for each tab character (tab stops are eight characters apart). If the character is a control character other than those previously mentioned, the character is written using  $\hat{x}$  notation, where *x* is a printable character. If the character is written to

## **4-8 CURSES**

**addch**

the last character position on a line, a newline is generated automatically. If the character is written to the last character position of a scrolling region and `scrollok()` is enabled, the scrolling region is scrolled up one line (see `wsetscrreg()`).

Individual characters can be highlighted by performing a bitwise OR operation between the character and one or more of the constants shown in Table 4-2.

**Table 4-2. Constant Values for Highlighting Attributes**

| Constant                | Description                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| A_ALTCHARSET            | Alternate character set                |
| A_ATTRIBUTES            | Attribute mask                         |
| A_BLINK                 | Blinking                               |
| A_BOLD                  | Bold                                   |
| A_CHARTEXT              | Character mask                         |
| A_COLOR                 | Color mask                             |
| A_DIM                   | Dim                                    |
| A_INVIS                 | Invisible                              |
| A_NORMAL                | Disable attributes                     |
| A_PROTECT               | No display                             |
| A_REVERSE               | Reverse video                          |
| A_STANDOUT              | Highlights specific to terminal        |
| A_UNDERLINE             | Underline                              |
| COLOR_PAIR( <i>n</i> )  | Color pair number <i>n</i>             |
| PAIR_NUMBER( <i>a</i> ) | Pair number for COLOR_PAIR( <i>n</i> ) |

The characters shown in Table 4-3 are defined as constants in `CURSES`.

**CURSES 4-9**

addch

**Table 4-3. Constant Values for Characters**

| Constant     | Character | Description         |
|--------------|-----------|---------------------|
| ACS_VLINE    |           | Vertical line       |
| ACS_HLINE    | -         | Horizontal line     |
| ACS_ULCORNER | +         | Upper-left corner   |
| ACS_URCORNER | +         | Upper-right corner  |
| ACS_BLCORNER | +         | Bottom-left corner  |
| ACS_BRCORNER | +         | Bottom-right corner |
| ACS_RTEE     | +         | Right tee (- )      |
| ACS_LTEE     | +         | Left tee (  -)      |
| ACS_BTEE     | +         | Bottom tee ( )      |
| ACS_TTEE     | +         | Top tee (T)         |
| ACS_CHECK    | !         | Check mark          |
| ACS_PLUS     | +         | Plus                |
| ACS_DIAMOND  | +         | Diamond             |
| ACS_CKBOARD  | :         | Checker board       |
| ACS_DEGREE   | '         | Degree sign         |
| ACS_PLMINUS  | #         | Plus/Minus          |
| ACS_BULLET   | o         | Bullet              |
| ACS_LARROW   | <         | Left arrow          |
| ACS_RARROW   | >         | Right arrow         |
| ACS_DARROW   | v         | Down arrow          |
| ACS_UARROW   | ^         | Up arrow            |
| ACS_BOARD    | #         | Board of squares    |
| ACS_LANTERN  | #         | Lantern symbol      |
| ACS_BLOCK    | #         | Solid square block  |

#### **4-10 CURSES**

---

**Note**           The `addch()`, `mvaddch()`, and `mvwaddch()` routines are macros.

---

### **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3.

### **See Also**

`winsch()`, `nl()`, `nonl()`, `scrollok()`, `wattron()`, `wattroff()`, `wattrset()`,  
`wbkgdset()`, `wprintw()`, `wscrl()`, `wsetscrreg()`

### **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

## **addchstr**

---

**addchstr**  
**waddchstr**  
**addchnstr**  
**waddchnstr**  
**mvaddchstr**  
**mvwaddchstr**  
**mvaddchnstr**  
**mvwaddchnstr**

The **addchstr** set of routines is used to copy a character string (with attributes) to a window.

### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int addchstr(chtype *chstr);
int waddchstr(WINDOW *win, chtype *chstr);

int addchnstr(chtype *chstr, int n);
int waddchnstr(WINDOW *win, chtype *chstr, int n);

int mvaddchstr(int y, int x, chtype *chstr);
int mvwaddchstr(WINDOW *win, int y, int x, chtype *chstr);

int mvaddchnstr(int y, int x, chtype *chstr, int n);
int mvwaddchnstr(WINDOW *win, int y, int x, chtype *chstr, int n);
```

### **Parameters**

|              |                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>chstr</i> | A pointer to the <b>chtype</b> string to be copied to the window.                                                                                                    |
| <i>n</i>     | The maximum number of characters to be copied from <i>chstr</i> .<br>If <i>n</i> is less than 0, the entire string is written, or as much of it as fits on the line. |
| <i>win</i>   | A pointer to the window to which the string is to be copied.                                                                                                         |

## **4-12 CURSES**

## **addchstr**

|          |                                                                                          |
|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>x</i> | The <i>x</i> (column) coordinate of the starting position of <i>chstr</i> in the window. |
| <i>y</i> | The <i>y</i> (row) coordinate of the starting position of <i>chstr</i> in the window.    |

### **Return Values**

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

### **Description**

The `addchstr()` routine copies the `chtype` character string to the `stdscr` window at the current cursor position. The `waddchstr()` routine performs the identical action, but writes to the window specified by *win*. The `mvaddchstr()` and `mvwaddchstr()` routines copy the character string to the starting position indicated by the *x* (column) and *y* (row) parameters (the former to the `stdscr` window; the latter to window *win*).

The `addchnstr()`, `waddchnstr()`, `mvaddchnstr()`, and `mvwaddchnstr()` routines write *n* characters to the window, or as many as will fit on the line. If *n* is less than 0, the entire string is written, or as much of it as fits on the line. The former two routines place the string at the current cursor position; the latter two commands use the position specified by the *x* and *y* parameters.

These routines differ from the `waddnstr()` set of routines in several important respects. First, the position of the cursor is not advanced after the string is written to the window. Second, these routines are faster because they copy the string into the window without performing checks such as line wrapping on a newline; instead, the string is truncated if it does not fit on the line. Third, the current foreground and background window attributes are not combined with the character; only the attributes that are already part of the `chtype` character are used.

---

|             |                                                           |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note</b> | All routines except <code>waddchnstr()</code> are macros. |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|

---

**addchstr**

### **Implementation Considerations**

UNIX System V implementation

### **See Also**

`waddch()`, `waddnstr()`, `wattrset()`

### **Portability**

UNIX System V

## **4-14 CURSES**

**addstr**  
**waddstr**  
**addnstr**  
**waddnstr**  
**mvaddstr**  
**mvwaddstr**  
**mvaddnstr**  
**mvwaddnstr**

The `addstr` set of routines is used to add a character string (with attributes) to a window.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int addstr(char *str);
int waddstr(WINDOW *win, char *str);

int addnstr(char *str, int n);
int waddnstr(WINDOW *win, char *str, int n);

int mvaddstr(int y, int x, char *str);
int mvwaddstr(WINDOW *win, int y, int x, char *str);

int mvaddnstr(int y, int x, char *str, int n);
int mvwaddnstr(WINDOW *win, int y, int x, char *str, int n);
```

### Parameters

|            |                                                                                        |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>str</i> | A pointer to the character string that is to be written to the window.                 |
| <i>win</i> | A pointer to the window in which the string is to be written.                          |
| <i>x</i>   | The <i>x</i> (column) coordinate of the starting position of <i>str</i> in the window. |



## **addstr**

*y*                      The *y* (row) coordinate of the starting position of *str* in the window.

## **Return Values**

OK                      Successful completion.

ERR                     An error occurred. An attempt was made to write outside the window boundary.

## **Description**

The **addstr()** routine writes a null-terminated character string to the **stdscr** window at the current cursor position and advances the cursor. The **waddstr()** routine performs an identical action, but writes the character to the window specified by *win*. The **mvaddstr()** and **mvwaddstr()** routines write the character string to the position indicated by the *x* (column) and *y* (row) parameters (the former to the **stdscr** window; the latter to window *win*).

The functionality of these routines is equivalent to calling the corresponding **waddch()** set of routines once for each character in the string. Refer to **waddch()** for a complete description of the interaction between the foreground and background attributes of the window and the character written. Note that these routines differ from the **waddchnstr()** set of routines in that the latter copy the string as is (without combining each character with the foreground and background attributes of the window).

The **addnstr()**, **waddnstr()**, **mvaddnstr()**, and **mvwaddnstr()** routines write at most *n* characters to the window. If *n* is less than 0, the entire string is written. The former two routines place the characters at the current cursor position; the latter two commands use the position specified by the *x* and *y* parameters.

---

**Note**                      All routines except **waddnstr()** are macros.

---

## **4-16 CURSES**

**Implementation Considerations**

The `addstr()`, `waddstr()`, `mvaddstr()`, and `mvwaddstr()` are identical to XPG/3. The `addnstr()`, `waddnstr()`, `mvaddnstr()`, and `mvwaddnstr()` routines are UNIX System V implementations.

**See Also**

`waddch()`, `waddchnstr()`

**Portability**

The `addstr()`, `waddstr()`, `mvaddstr()`, and `mvwaddstr()` routines conform to HP-UX, UNIX System V, and XPG/3. The `addnstr()`, `waddnstr()`, `mvaddnstr()`, and `mvwaddnstr()` routines conform to UNIX System V.

**attroff**

---

**attroff**  
**wattroff**  
**attron**  
**wattron**  
**attrset**  
**wattrset**  
**standend**  
**wstandend**  
**standout**  
**wstandout**

The **attroff** set of routines is used to change the foreground window attributes.

### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int attroff(chtype attrs);
int wattroff(WINDOW *win, chtype attrs);

int attron(chtype attrs);
int wattron(WINDOW *win, chtype attrs);

int attrset(chtype attrs);
int wattrset(WINDOW *win, chtype attrs);

int standend();
int wstandend(WINDOW *win);

int standout();
int wstandout(WINDOW *win);
```

## **4-18 CURSES**

**Parameters**

|              |                                                                    |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>attrs</i> | The foreground window attributes to be added or removed.           |
| <i>win</i>   | A pointer to the window in which attribute changes are to be made. |

**Return Values**

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

**Description**

The **attroff()** and **attron()** routines remove and add, respectively, the specified foreground window attributes of **stdscr**. These routines only affect the attributes specified; attributes that existed before the call retain their values. The **wattroff()** and **wattron()** routines remove or add the specified attributes for window *win*.

The **attrset()** and **wattrset()** routines change the specified foreground window attributes of **stdscr** and *win* to new values; the old values are not retained.

The attributes shown in Table 4-4 are defined in **curses.h** and can be combined with the bitwise **OR** operator.

**attroff**

**Table 4-4. Constant Values for Highlighting Attributes**

| Constant                | Description                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| A_ALTCHARSET            | Alternate character set                |
| A_ATTRIBUTES            | Attribute mask                         |
| A_BLINK                 | Blinking                               |
| A_BOLD                  | Bold                                   |
| A_CHARTEXT              | Character mask                         |
| A_COLOR                 | Color mask                             |
| A_DIM                   | Dim                                    |
| A_INVIS                 | Invisible                              |
| A_NORMAL                | Disable attributes                     |
| A_PROTECT               | No display                             |
| A_REVERSE               | Reverse video                          |
| A_STANDOUT              | Highlights specific to terminal        |
| A_UNDERLINE             | Underline                              |
| COLOR_PAIR( <i>n</i> )  | Color-pair number <i>n</i>             |
| PAIR_NUMBER( <i>a</i> ) | Pair number for COLOR_PAIR( <i>n</i> ) |

The `standend()` routine is equivalent to `attrset(A_NORMAL)`. Similarly, the `wstandend()` routine is equivalent to `wattrset(win, A_NORMAL)`.

The `standout()` and `wstandout()` routines are equivalent to `attron(A_STANDOUT)` and `wattron(win, A_STANDOUT)`, respectively.

**CURSES** applies the current foreground attributes when writing characters to a window with the `waddch()`, `waddstr()`, or `wprintw()` routines.

The following example prints some text using the current foreground attributes, adds underlining, changes the attributes, prints more text, then changes the attributes back.

## **4-20 CURSES**

**attroff**

```
printw("This word is");
attrset(A_UNDERLINE);
printw("underlined.");
attrset(A_NORMAL);
printw("This is back to normal text.\n");
refresh();
```

---

**Note**            All of these routines are macros.

---

### **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3 except for color support

### **See Also**

`init_color()`, `init_pair()`, `start_color()`, `wbkgd()`, `wbkgdset()`

### **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

## **baudrate**

---

### **baudrate**

The `baudrate` routine returns the terminal baud rate.

#### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int baudrate();
```

#### **Return Values**

The terminal's baud rate is returned in bits per second.

#### **Description**

The `baudrate()` routine returns the terminal's data communication line and output speed in bits per second (for example, 9600).

#### **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

#### **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

---

**beep**  
**flash**

The **beep** and **flash** routines activate the audio-visual alarm.

**Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int beep();
int flash();
```

**Return Values**

|     |                                                                     |
|-----|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion.                                              |
| ERR | An error occurred. The terminal does not support either capability. |

**Description**

The **beep()** and **flash()** routines produce an audio and visual alarm on the terminal, respectively. If the terminal has the capability, **beep()** sounds a bell or beep, and **flash()** flashes the screen. One alarm is substituted for another if the terminal does not support the capability called. For example, a call to **beep()** for a terminal without that capability results in a flash and vice versa.

**Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

**Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3



## **bkgdset**

---

**bkgdset**  
**wbkgdset**  
**bkgd**  
**wbkgd**

The **bkgdset** set of routines is used to set the background character (and attributes) of a window.

### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

void bkgdset(chtype ch);
void wbkgdset(WINDOW *win, chtype ch);

int bkgd(chtype ch);
int wbkgd(WINDOW *win, chtype ch);
```

### **Parameters**

|            |                                                                         |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>ch</i>  | A pointer to the background character to be set.                        |
| <i>win</i> | A pointer to the window in which the background character is to be set. |

### **Return Values**

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

### **Description**

A window is made up of foreground and background attributes. All characters except space are part of the foreground. The character and its attributes make up a character/attribute pair defined as a **chtype**. The character is any 16-bit value; the attribute consists of highlighting attributes that affect the appearance of the character on the screen (for example, bold, underline).

## **4-24 CURSES**

## **bkgdset**

Each time a character, other than a space, is written to a window with `waddch()`, `wprintw()`, or `waddstr()`, a bitwise OR operation is performed between the `chtype` (foreground character with its attributes), the current foreground attributes of the window, and the current background attributes of the window. The current foreground attributes are set with `wattrset()`, `wattron()`, and `wattroff()`; the current background attributes are set with `wbkgdset()`. When spaces are written to the screen, the background character and attributes replace the space. For example, if the background attribute and character is

```
A_UNDERLINE | '*'
```

text written to the window appears underlined and the spaces appear as underlined asterisks.

After the OR operation, each character written retains the new foreground and background attributes that it has obtained. This allows the character to be copied “as is” to a window with the `waddchstr()` or `insch()` routines.

The `bkgdset()` routine sets the current background character and attributes for the `stdscr` window; `wbkgdset()` sets the current background character and attributes for window *win*. You must specify the complete character/attribute pair; for example:

```
bkgdset(A_BOLD | ' ');
```

sets the background attribute as bold and the background character as a space. The default background character/attribute pair is

```
bkgdset(A_NORMAL | ' ');
```

---

### **Note**

The current background character and attributes are written to the window by the `wclear()`, `werase()`, `cltroeol()`, and `cltrobot()` routines as well as any other routines that insert blanks. If a background character is not supplied (that is, only an attribute is given), results are undefined.

---

The `bkgd()` and `wbkgd()` routines update the entire window (`stdscr` and *win*, respectively) with the supplied background and perform a `wbkgdset()`.

## **bkgdset**

---

**Note**           The `bkgd()`, `wbkgd()`, and `bkgdset()` routines are macros.

---

## **Implementation Considerations**

UNIX System V implementation

## **See Also**

`addch()`, `attroff()`, `attron()`, `waddchstr()`, `wattrset()`, `winsch()`

## **Portability**

UNIX System V

---

**border**  
**box**  
**wborder**

The **border** set of routines is used to add a border to a window.

**Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int border(chtype ls, chtype rs, chtype ts, chtype bs,
 chtype tl, chtype tr, chtype bl, chtype br);
int wborder(WINDOW *win, chtype ls, chtype rs,
 chtype ts, chtype bs, chtype tl, chtype tr,
 chtype bl, chtype br);

int box(WINDOW *win, chtype verch, chtype horch);
```

**Parameters**

|              |                                                                              |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>bl</i>    | The character and attributes used for the bottom-left corner of the border.  |
| <i>br</i>    | The character and attributes used for the bottom-right corner of the border. |
| <i>bs</i>    | The character and attributes used for the bottom of the border.              |
| <i>horch</i> | The character and attributes used for the top and bottom rows of the box.    |
| <i>ls</i>    | The character and attributes used for the left side of the border.           |
| <i>rs</i>    | The character and attributes used for the right side of the border.          |
| <i>tl</i>    | The character and attributes used for the top- left corner of the border.    |

## **border**

|              |                                                                              |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>tr</i>    | The character and attributes used for the top- right corner of the border.   |
| <i>ts</i>    | The character and attributes used for the top of the border.                 |
| <i>verch</i> | The character and attributes used for the left and right columns of the box. |
| <i>win</i>   | The pointer to the window in which the border or box is to be drawn.         |

## **Return Values**

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

## **Description**

The `border()`, `wborder()`, and `box()` routines draw a border around the specified window. A parameter with the value of zero is replaced by the default value as defined in `curses.h`. The constant values for a border are shown in Table 4-5.

Table 4-5. Constant Values for Borders

| Parameter    | Constant Used | Value |
|--------------|---------------|-------|
| <i>verch</i> | ACS_VLINE     |       |
| <i>horch</i> | ACS_HLINE     | -     |
| <i>ls</i>    | ACS_VLINE     |       |
| <i>rs</i>    | ACS_VLINE     |       |
| <i>ts</i>    | ACS_HLINE     | -     |
| <i>bs</i>    | ACS_HLINE     | -     |
| <i>bl</i>    | ACS_BLCORNER  | +     |
| <i>br</i>    | ACS_BRCORNER  | +     |
| <i>tl</i>    | ACS_ULCORNER  | +     |
| <i>tr</i>    | ACS_URCORNER  | +     |

The call

```
box (win, verch, horch)
```

is a short form for

```
wborder(win, verch, verch, horch, horch, 0, 0, 0, 0)
```

When the window is boxed, the bottom and top rows and right and left columns are unavailable for text.

---

**Note**            The **border()** and **box()** routines are macros.

---

## **border**

### **Implementation Considerations**

The `box()` routine is identical to XPG/3. The `border()` and `wborder()` routines are UNIX System V implementations.

### **See Also**

`waddch()`, `wattrset()`

### **Portability**

The `box()` routine conforms to HP-UX, UNIX System V, and XPG/3. The `border()` and `wborder()` routines conform to UNIX System V.

---

## **cbreak nocrbreak**

The **cbreak** and **nocrbreak** routines enable and disable the character-mode operation.

### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int cbreak();
int nocbreak();
```

### **Return Values**

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

### **Description**

The **cbreak()** and **nocrbreak()** routines enable and disable character-mode operation, respectively. When enabled, characters typed by the user are immediately processed by the program. When disabled, the terminal driver is placed into line canonical input mode, which buffers typed characters (until a newline or carriage return are typed) and handles **erase()** and **kill()** character processing. These routines do not affect flow control or interrupt characters.

The terminal may or may not be in character mode operation initially. Most interactive programs require **cbreak()** to be enabled.

### **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3



**cbreak**

**See Also**

`wgetch()`, `halfdelay()`, `nodelay()`, `raw()`, `wtimeout()`

**Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

---

## clear wclear

The `clear` and `wclear` routines are used to clear the window.

### Syntax

```
#include < curses.h>

int clear();
int wclear(WINDOW *win);
```

### Parameters

*win*                      A pointer to the window that is to be cleared.

### Return Values

OK                        Successful completion.

ERR                      An error occurred.

### Description

The `clear()` routine clears `stdscr`, destroying its previous contents. The `wclear()` routine performs the same action, but clears the window specified by *win* instead of `stdscr`. These routines are similar to `erase()` and `werase()` except they also call `clearok()`. The `clearok()` routine clears and redraws the entire screen on the next call to `wrefresh()` for the window.

The current background character (and attributes) is used to clear the screen.

---

**Note**                      The `clear()` routine is a macro.

---

**clear**

## **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

## **See Also**

`clearok()`, `wbkgdset()`, `wclrtoobot()`, `wclrtoeol()`, `werase()`

## **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

## clearok

The `clearok` routine is used to clear and redraw the window with the next refresh.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int clearok(WINDOW *win, bool bf);
```

### Parameters

|            |                                                              |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>win</i> | A pointer to the window that is to be cleared and refreshed. |
| <i>bf</i>  | A Boolean expression.                                        |

### Return Values

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

### Description

If *bf* is TRUE, `clearok()` clears and redraws the entire screen on the next call to `wrefresh()`. If *win* is `curscr`, the next call to `wrefresh()` for any window clears and redraws the screen.

### Implementation Considerations

Identical to XPG/3

### See Also

`wbkgdset()`, `wclear()`, `werase()`, `wrefresh()`

### Portability

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

## **clrtoobot**

---

### **clrtoobot wclrtoobot**

The `clrtoobot` and `wclrtoobot` routines are used to clear to the end of the window.

#### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int clrtoobot();
int wclrtoobot(WINDOW *win);
```

#### **Parameters**

*win*                      A pointer to the window that is to be cleared.

#### **Return Values**

OK                        Successful completion.  
ERR                      An error occurred.

#### **Description**

The `clrtoobot()` routine clears all characters in the `stdscr` window from the cursor to the end of the window. The `wclrtoobot()` routine performs the same action in the window specified by *win* instead of in `stdscr`. The current background character (and attributes) is used to clear the screen.

---

**Note**                    The `clrtoobot()` routine is a macro.

---

**clrtobot**

## **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

## **See Also**

`clearok()`, `wbkgdset()`, `wclear()`, `wcrltoeol()`, `werase()`

## **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

**CURSES 4-37**

**clrtoeol**

---

## **clrtoeol** **wclrtoeol**

The `clrtoeol` and `wclrtoeol` routines are used to clear to end of line.

### **Syntax**

```
#include < curses.h>

int clrtoeol();
int wclrtoeol(WINDOW *win);
```

### **Parameters**

*win*                      A pointer to the window in which to clear to the end of the line.

### **Return Values**

OK                        Successful completion.  
ERR                      An error occurred.

### **Description**

The `clrtoeol()` routine clears the current line from the cursor to the right margin in the `stdscr` window. The `wclrtoeol()` routine performs the same action, but in the window specified by *win* instead of `stdscr`. The current background character (and attributes) is used to clear the screen.

---

**Note**                    The `clrtoeol()` routine is a macro.

---

**clrtoeol**

### **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

### **See Also**

`clearok()`, `wbkgdset()`, `wclear()`, `wclrtoeol()`, `werase()`

### **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

**CURSES 4-39**



---

## **color\_pair**

---

**Note**        The `color_pair` routine is not implemented at this time.

---

---

## copywin

The `copywin` routine is used to overlay or overwrite any portion of window.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>
```

```
int copywin(WINDOW *srcwin, WINDOW *dstwin, int sminrow, int smincol,
int dminrow, int dmincol, int dmaxrow, int dmaxcol, int overlay);
```

### Parameters

|                |                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>srcwin</i>  | A pointer to the source window to be copied.                                                                                      |
| <i>dstwin</i>  | A pointer to the destination window to be overlayed or overwritten.                                                               |
| <i>smincol</i> | The column coordinate of the upper-left corner of the rectangular area on the source window to be copied.                         |
| <i>sminrow</i> | The row coordinate of the upper-left corner of the rectangular area on the source window to be copied.                            |
| <i>dmincol</i> | The column coordinate of the upper-left corner of the rectangular area on destination window to be overlayed or overwritten.      |
| <i>dminrow</i> | The row coordinate of the upper-left corner of the rectangular area on the destination window to be overlayed or overwritten.     |
| <i>dmaxcol</i> | The column coordinate of the lower-right corner of the rectangular area on the destination window to be overlayed or overwritten. |
| <i>dmaxrow</i> | The row coordinate of the lower-right corner of the rectangular area on the destination window to be overlayed or overwritten.    |
| <i>overlay</i> | A true or false value that determines whether the destination window is overlayed or overwritten.                                 |

## **copywin**

### **Return Values**

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

### **Description**

The `copywin()` routine overlays or overwrites windows similar to the `overlay()` and `overwrite()` functions; however, `copywin()` allows a finer degree of control on what portion of the window to overlay or overwrite.

The parameters *smincol* and *sminrow* specify the upper-left corner of the rectangular area of the source window to be copied. The *dminrow* and *dmincol* parameters specify the upper-left corner of the rectangular area of the destination window to which the specified portion of the source is to be copied. The *dmaxrow* and *dmaxcol* parameters specify the bottom-right corner of the rectangular area of the destination window to which the specified portion of the source is to be copied.

If *overlay* is `TRUE`, only nonblank characters are copied to the destination window; if `FALSE`, all characters are copied.

### **Implementation Considerations**

UNIX System V implementation

### **See Also**

`overlay()`, `overwrite()`

### **Portability**

UNIX System V

---

## cur\_set

The `cur_set` routine is used to set the visibility of the cursor.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int cur_set(int visibility);
```

### Parameters

*visibility*            A value of 0 (invisible), 1 (normal), or 2 (very visible).

### Return Values

On success, previous cursor visibility is returned; **ERR** is returned if the requested visibility is not supported.

### Description

The `cur_set()` routine sets the visibility of the cursor to invisible (0), normal (1), or very visible (2).

### Implementation Considerations

UNIX System V implementation

### Portability

UNIX System V

## **def\_prog\_mode**

---

## **def\_prog\_mode** **def\_shell\_mode**

The `def_prog_mode` and `def_shell_mode` routines are used to save terminal modes.

### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int def_prog_mode();
int def_shell_mode();
```

### **Return Values**

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

### **Description**

The `def_prog_mode()` and `def_shell_mode()` routines save the current terminal modes as “program” (within `CURSES`) or “shell” (outside `CURSES`). These are used by the `reset_prog_mode()` and `reset_shell_mode()` routines. The modes are saved automatically by the `initscr()`, `newterm()`, and `setupterm()` routines.

These routines can also be used outside `CURSES` with `terminfo` routines.

### **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

### **See Also**

`initscr()`, `newterm()`, `setupterm()`, `reset_prog_mode()`,  
`reset_shell_mode()`

## **4-44 CURSES**

**def\_prog\_mode**

## **Portability**

UNIX System V, XPG/3

**CURSES 4-45**

---

## del\_curterm

The `del_curterm` routine is used to free space pointed to by `TERMINAL` (interface to `TERMINFO`).

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int del_curterm(TERMINAL *oterm);
```

### Parameters

*oterm*                    The terminal type for which to free space.

### Return Values

OK                        Successful completion.  
ERR                      An error occurred.

### Description

The `del_curterm()` routine is a low-level routine only used outside of `CURSES` when the program has to deal directly with the `TERMINFO` database to handle certain terminal capabilities. The use of appropriate `CURSES` routines is recommended in all other situations.

The `del_curterm()` routine frees the space pointed to by *oterm*. If *oterm* and the *cur\_term* variable are the same, the `TERMINFO Boolean`, *numeric*, or *string* variables refer to invalid memory locations until you call `setupterm()` and specify a new terminal type.

### Implementation Considerations

UNIX System V implementation

**del\_curterm**

### **See Also**

`set_curterm()`

### **Portability**

UNIX System V

**CURSES 4-47**



---

## delay\_output

The `delay_output` routine is used to delay output.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int delay_output(int ms);
```

### Parameters

*ms*                      The number of milliseconds to delay the output.

### Return Values

OK                      Successful completion.  
ERR                     An error occurred.

### Description

The `delay_output()` routine delays output for *ms* milliseconds by inserting pad characters in the output stream.

### Implementation Considerations

Identical to XPG/3

### Portability

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

---

**delch**  
**wdelch**  
**mvdelch**  
**mvwdelch**

The `delch` set of routines is used to remove a character.

**Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int delch();
int wdelch(WINDOW *win);

int mvdelch(int y, int x);
int mvwdelch(WINDOW *win, int y, int x);
```

**Parameters**

|            |                                                                                  |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>x</i>   | The <i>x</i> (column) coordinate of the position of the character to be removed. |
| <i>y</i>   | The <i>y</i> (row) coordinate of the position of the character to be removed.    |
| <i>win</i> | A pointer to the window containing the character to be removed.                  |

**Return Values**

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

## **delch**

### **Description**

The `delch()` and `wdelch()` routines delete the character at the current cursor position from `stdscr` and *win*, respectively. All remaining characters on the same line to the right of the deleted character are moved left one character. The last character on the line becomes a space; characters on other lines are not affected.

The `mvdelch()` and `mvwdelch()` routines delete the character at the position specified by the *x* and *y* parameters; the former deletes the character from `stdscr`; the latter from *win*.

---

**Note**            The `delch()`, `mvdelch()`, and `mvwdelch()` routines are macros.

---

### **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

### **See Also**

`wbgdset()`

### **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

## deleteln wdeleteln

The `deleteln` and `wdeleteln` routines are used to remove a line.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int deleteln();
int wdeleteln (WINDOW *win);
```

### Parameters

*win*                      A pointer to the window from which the line is removed.

### Return Values

OK                        Successful completion.  
ERR                      An error occurred.

### Description

The `deleteln()` and `wdeleteln()` routines delete the line containing the cursor from `stdscr` and *win*, respectively. All lines below the one deleted are moved up one line. The last line of the window becomes blank. The position of the cursor is unchanged.

---

**Note**                    These routines are macros.

---

**deleteln**

## **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

## **See Also**

`winsdeln()`, `winsertrl()`, `wbkgdset()`

## **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

---

## **delscreen**

The **delscreen** routine is used to free space associated with the **SCREEN** data structure.

### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int delscreen(SCREEN *sp);
```

### **Parameters**

*sp*                      A pointer to the screen structure for which to free space.

### **Return Values**

OK                      Successful completion.  
ERR                     An error occurred.

### **Description**

The **delscreen()** routine frees space associated with the **SCREEN** data structure. This routine should be called after **endwin()** if a **SCREEN** data structure is no longer needed.

### **Implementation Considerations**

UNIX System V implementation

### **See Also**

**endwin()**, **initscr()**, **newterm()**

### **Portability**

UNIX System V

---

## delwin

The `delwin` routine is used to delete a window.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int delwin(WINDOW *win);
```

### Parameters

*win*                      A pointer to the window that is to be deleted.

### Return Values

OK                        Successful completion.  
ERR                      An error occurred.

### Description

The `delwin()` routine deletes the specified window, freeing up the memory associated with it.

---

|             |                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note</b> | If you delete a parent window without deleting its subwindows and then try to manipulate the subwindows, you may encounter odd results. |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

---

### Implementation Considerations

Identical to XPG/3

**delwin**

### **See Also**

`newwin()`, `subwin()`, `derwin()`

### **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

**CURSES 4-55**



---

## derwin

The `derwin` routine is used to create a subwindow relative to parent window.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>
```

```
WINDOW *derwin(WINDOW *orig, int nlines, int ncols, int begin_y,
 int begin_x);
```

### Parameters

|                |                                                                                                            |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>orio</i>    | A pointer to the parent window for the newly created subwindow.                                            |
| <i>nlines</i>  | The number of lines in the subwindow.                                                                      |
| <i>ncols</i>   | The number of columns in the subwindow.                                                                    |
| <i>begin_y</i> | The <i>y</i> (row) coordinate of the upper-left corner of the subwindow, relative to the parent window.    |
| <i>begin_x</i> | The <i>x</i> (column) coordinate of the upper-left corner of the subwindow, relative to the parent window. |

### Return Values

On success, a pointer to the new window structure is returned; otherwise, a null pointer is returned.

### Description

The `derwin()` routine creates a subwindow within window *orig*, with the specified number of lines and columns, and upper left corner positioned at *begin\_x*, *begin\_y* relative to window *orig*. A pointer to the new window structure is returned.

The original window and subwindow share character storage of the overlapping area. (Each window maintains its own pointers, cursor location, and other

## 4-56 CURSES

**derwin**

items.) This means that characters and attributes are identical in overlapping areas regardless of which window characters are written to.

When using subwindows, it is often necessary to call `touchwin()` before `wrefresh()` to maintain proper screen contents.

---

|             |                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note</b> | The <code>subwin()</code> routine creates a subwindow in exactly the same way, but allows you to specify coordinates relative to the physical screen. |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

---

## **Implementation Considerations**

UNIX System V implementation

## **See Also**

`newwin()`, `subwin()`, `touchwin()`, `delwin()`

## **Portability**

UNIX System V

**CURSES 4-57**

---

## dupwin

The `dupwin` routine is used to create a duplicate of a window.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

WINDOW *dupwin(WINDOW, *win);
```

### Parameters

*win*                      A pointer to the window that is to be duplicated.

### Return Values

On success, a pointer to new window structure is returned; otherwise, a null pointer is returned.

### Description

The `dupwin()` routine creates a duplicate of the window *win*. A pointer to the new window structure is returned.

### Implementation Considerations

UNIX System V implementation

### See Also

`derwin()`, `newwin()`, `subwin()`

### Portability

UNIX System V

---

## echo noecho

The `echo` and `noecho` routines are used to enable and disable terminal echo.

### Syntax

```
#include < curses.h>

int echo();
int noecho();
```

### Return Values

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

### Description

The `echo()` and `noecho()` routines enable and disable the terminal echo, respectively. When enabled, characters received by `getch()` are echoed back to the terminal. When disabled, characters are transferred to the program without echoing them to the terminal display. The program may instead echo the characters to an area of the screen controlled by the program or may not echo the characters at all. Terminal echo is enabled, by default.

Subsequent calls to `echo()` or `noecho()` do not flush type-ahead.

---

|             |                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note</b> | The tty driver <code>echo</code> is disabled by <code>initscr()</code> and <code>newterm()</code> . All echoing is controlled by <code>CURSES</code> . |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

---

### Implementation Considerations

Identical to XPG/3

**echo**

### **See Also**

`wgetch()`, `wgetstr()`, `wscanw()`

### **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

## echochar wechochar

The `echochar` and `wechochar` routines are used to add a character and refresh the window.

### Syntax

```
#include < curses.h>

int echochar(chtype ch);
int wechochar(WINDOW *win, chtype ch);
```

### Parameters

|            |                                                                |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>win</i> | A pointer to the window in which the character is to be added. |
| <i>ch</i>  | A pointer to the character to be written to the window.        |

### Return Values

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

### Description

The `echochar()` and `wechochar()` routines produce the same effect as a call to `addch()` followed by a call to `refresh()`, or a call to `waddch()` followed by a call to `wrefresh()`, respectively.

### Implementation Considerations

UNIX System V implementation

**echochar**

## **See Also**

waddch(), wrefresh()

## **Portability**

UNIX System V

## endwin isendwin

The `endwin` and `isendwin` routines are used to restore the initial terminal environment.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int endwin();
int isendwin();
```

### Return Values

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

### Description

The `endwin()` routine restores tty modes, resets the terminal, and moves the cursor to the lower-left corner of the screen. This routine should be called before exiting or escaping `CURSES` temporarily. To resume `CURSES` after a temporary escape, call the `wrefresh()` or `doupdate()` routines.

If the program interacts with multiple terminals, call `endwin()` for each terminal.

The `isendwin()` routine returns `TRUE` if `endwin()` has been called without subsequent calls to `wrefresh()` and returns `FALSE` otherwise.

### Implementation Considerations

The `endwin()` routine is identical to XPG/3. The `isendwin()` routine is a UNIX System V implementation.



**endwin**

### **See Also**

`doupdate()`, `wrefresh()`

### **Portability**

The `endwin()` routine conforms to HP-UX, UNIX System V, and XPG/3. The `isendwin()` routine conforms to UNIX System V.

## erase werase

The `erase` and `werase` routines are used to erase a window.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int erase();
int werase(WINDOW *win);
```

### Parameters

*win*                      A pointer to the window that you want to erase.

### Return Values

OK                        Successful completion.  
ERR                       An error occurred.

### Description

The `erase()` routine erases the contents of the `stdscr` window, destroying its previous contents. The `werase()` routine performs the same action, but erases the content of *win* instead of `stdscr`. The current background character (and attributes) is used to erase the screen.

---

**Note**                    The `erase()` routine is a macro.

---

**erase**

### **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

### **See Also**

`clearok()`, `wbkgdset()`, `wclear()`, `wclrtoobot()`, `wclrtoeol()`

### **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

## **erasechar**

The **erasechar** routine is used to return the current **ERASE** character.

### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

char erasechar();
```

### **Return Values**

The terminal's current **ERASE** character is returned.

### **Description**

The **erasechar()** routine returns the user's choice of **ERASE** character from the tty driver. This character is used to delete the previous character during keyboard input. The returned value can be used when including deletion capability in interactive programs.

### **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

### **See Also**

**wgetnstr()**

### **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

---

## **flushinp**

The `flushinp` routine is used to discard type-ahead characters.

### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>
```

```
int flushinp();
```

### **Return Values**

OK                      Successful completion.

ERR                    An error occurred.

### **Description**

The `flushinp()` routine discards all type-ahead characters (characters typed by the user, but not yet processed by `CURSES`).

### **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

### **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

**getch**  
**wgetch**  
**mvgetch**  
**mvwgetch**  
**ungetch**

The `getch`, `wgetch`, `mvgetch`, `mvwgetch`, and `ungetch` routines are used to get a character from the keyboard.

**Syntax**

```
#include < curses.h>

int getch();
int wgetch (WINDOW *win);

int mvgetch(int y, int x);
int mvwgetch(WINDOW *win, int y, int x);

int ungetch(int ch);
```

**Parameters**

|            |                                                                                              |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>ch</i>  | The character to be put back in the input queue for the next call to <code>getch()</code> .  |
| <i>x</i>   | The <i>x</i> (column) coordinate for the position of the character to be read.               |
| <i>y</i>   | The <i>y</i> (row) coordinate for the position of the character to be read.                  |
| <i>win</i> | A pointer to the window associated with the terminal from which the character is to be read. |

## **getch**

### **Return Values**

|     |                                                                                                                  |
|-----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion.                                                                                           |
| ERR | An error occurred. The <code>nodelay()</code> or <code>wtimeout(0)</code> routine is set, and no input is ready. |

### **Description**

The `getch()` and `wgetch()` routines get a character from the terminal associated with the window `stdscr` or window *win*, respectively. The `mvgetch()` and `mvwgetch()` routines move the cursor to the position specified in `stdscr` or *win*, respectively, then get a character.

If the window is not a pad and has been changed since the last call to `wrefresh()`, `getch()` calls `wrefresh()` to update the window before the next character is read.

The setting of certain routines affects how `getch()` works. For example, if `cbreak()` is set, characters typed by the user are immediately processed. If `halfdelay()` is set, `getch()` waits until a character is typed or returns `ERR` if no character is typed within the specified timeout period. This timeout can also be specified for individual windows with the `delay` parameter of `wtimeout()`. A negative value waits for input; a value of 0 returns `ERR` if no input is ready; a positive value blocks until input arrives or the time specified expires (in which case `ERR` returns). If `nodelay()` is set, `ERR` is returned if no input is waiting; if not set, `getch()` waits until input arrives. Each character will be echoed to the window unless `noecho()` has been set.

If keypad handling is enabled (`keypad()` is `TRUE`), the token for the function key is returned. If a character is received that could be the beginning of a function key (for example, ESC), an interbyte timer is set. If the remainder of the sequence is not received before the time expires, the character is passed through; otherwise, the value of the function key is returned. If `notimeout()` is set, the interbyte timer is not set.

---

|             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note</b> | The ESCAPE key is typically a prefix key used with function keys. Since prefix keys used with function keys should not be used as a single character, ensure that you do not use the ESCAPE key as a single character. |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

---

## **4-70 CURSES**

**getch**

Table 4-6 shows a list of tokens for the function keys that are returned by `getch()` if keypad handling is enabled. (Some terminals may not support all tokens.)

**Table 4-6. Constant Values for Function Keys**

| Constant          | Description                            |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------|
| KEY_BREAK         | Break key                              |
| KEY_DOWN          | The down arrow key                     |
| KEY_UP            | The up arrow key                       |
| KEY_LEFT          | The left arrow key                     |
| KEY_RIGHT         | The right arrow key                    |
| KEY_HOME          | Home key                               |
| KEY_BACKSPACE     | Backspace                              |
| KEY_F0            | Function keys. Space for 64            |
| KEY_F( <i>n</i> ) | (KEY_F0+( <i>n</i> )) keys is reserved |
| KEY_DL            | Delete line                            |
| KEY_IL            | Insert line                            |
| KEY_DC            | Delete character                       |
| KEY_IC            | Insert char or enter insert mode       |
| KEY_EIC           | Exit insert char mode                  |
| KEY_CLEAR         | Clear screen                           |
| KEY_EOS           | Clear to end of screen                 |
| KEY_EOL           | Clear to end of line                   |
| KEY_SF            | Scroll 1 line forward                  |
| KEY_SR            | Scroll 1 line backwards                |

**CURSES 4-71**



getch

**Table 4-6. Constant Values for Function Keys (continued)**

| Constant    | Description                      |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| KEY_NPAGE   | Next page                        |
| KEY_PPAGE   | Previous page                    |
| KEY_STAB    | Set tab                          |
| KEY_CTAB    | Clear tab                        |
| KEY_CATAB   | Clear all tabs                   |
| KEY_ENTER   | Enter or send                    |
| KEY_SRESET  | Soft (partial) reset             |
| KEY_RESET   | Reset or hard reset              |
| KEY_PRINT   | Print or copy                    |
| KEY_LL      | Home down or bottom (lower left) |
| KEY_A1      | Upper left of keypad             |
| KEY_A3      | Upper right of keypad            |
| KEY_B2      | Center of keypad                 |
| KEY_C1      | Lower left of keypad             |
| KEY_C3      | Lower right of keypad            |
| KEY_BTAB    | Back tab                         |
| KEY_BEG     | Beginning key                    |
| KEY_CANCEL  | Cancel key                       |
| KEY_CLOSE   | Close key                        |
| KEY_COMMAND | Cmd (command) key                |
| KEY_COPY    | Copy key                         |
| KEY_CREATE  | Create key                       |

## **4-72 CURSES**

getch

**Table 4-6. Constant Values for Function Keys (continued)**

| Constant      | Description           |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| KEY_END       | End key               |
| KEY_EXIT      | Exit key              |
| KEY_FIND      | Find key              |
| KEY_HELP      | Help key              |
| KEY_MARK      | Mark key              |
| KEY_MESSAGE   | Message key           |
| KEY_MOVE      | Move key              |
| KEY_NEXT      | Next object key       |
| KEY_OPEN      | Open key              |
| KEY_OPTIONS   | Options key           |
| KEY_PREVIOUS  | Previous object key   |
| KEY_REDO      | Redo key              |
| KEY_REFERENCE | Ref(ERENCE) key       |
| KEY_REFRESH   | Refresh key           |
| KEY_REPLACE   | Replace key           |
| KEY_RESTART   | Restart key           |
| KEY_RESUME    | Resume key            |
| KEY_SAVE      | Save key              |
| KEY_SBEG      | Shifted beginning key |
| KEY_SCANCEL   | Shifted cancel key    |
| KEY_SCOMMAND  | Shifted command key   |
| KEY_SCOPY     | Shifted copy key      |

**CURSES 4-73**

getch

**Table 4-6. Constant Values for Function Keys (continued)**

| Constant      | Description             |
|---------------|-------------------------|
| KEY_SCREATE   | Shifted create key      |
| KEY_SDC       | Shifted delete char key |
| KEY_SDL       | Shifted delete line key |
| KEY_SELECT    | Select key              |
| KEY_SEND      | Shifted end key         |
| KEY_SEOL      | Shifted clear line key  |
| KEY_SEXIT     | Shifted exit key        |
| KEY_SFIND     | Shifted find key        |
| KEY_SHELP     | Shifted help key        |
| KEY_SHOME     | Shifted home key        |
| KEY_SIC       | Shifted input key       |
| KEY_SLEFT     | Shifted left key        |
| KEY_SMESSAGES | Shifted messages key    |
| KEY_SMOVE     | Shifted move key        |
| KEY_SNEXT     | Shifted next key        |
| KEY_SOPTIONS  | Shifted options key     |
| KEY_SPREVIOUS | Shifted previous key    |
| KEY_SPRINT    | Shifted print key       |
| KEY_SREDO     | Shifted redo key        |
| KEY_SREPLACE  | Shifted replace key     |

**Table 4-6. Constant Values for Function Keys (continued)**

| Constant     | Description         |
|--------------|---------------------|
| KEY_SRIGHT   | Shifted right key   |
| KEY_SRSUME   | Shifted resume key  |
| KEY_SSAVE    | Shifted save key    |
| KEY_SSUSPEND | Shifted suspend key |
| KEY_SUNDO    | Shifted undo key    |
| KEY_SUSPEND  | Suspend key         |
| KEY_UNDO     | Undo key            |

The `ungetch()` routine delays processing of *ch* until the next call to `getch()`.

---

**Note**            The `getch()`, `mvgetch()`, and `mvwgetch()` routines are macros.

---

### Implementation Considerations

The `getch()`, `mvgetch()`, `mvwgetch()`, and `wgetch()` routines are identical to XPG/3. The `ungetch()` routine is a UNIX System V implementation.

### See Also

`cbreak()`, `echo()`, `keypad()`, `halfdelay()`, `nodelay()`, `notimeout()`, `raw()`, `wtimeout()`

### Portability

The `getch()`, `mvgetch()`, `mvwgetch()`, and `wgetch()` routines conform to HP-UX, UNIX System V, and XPG/3. The `ungetch()` routine conforms to UNIX System V.

## **getstr**

---

**getstr**  
**wgetstr**  
**wgetnstr**  
**mvgetstr**  
**mvwgetstr**

The **getstr** set of routines is used to get a character string from keyboard.

### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int getstr(char *str);
int wgetstr(WINDOW *win, char *str);

int wgetnstr(WINDOW *win, char *str, int n);

int mvgetstr(int y, int x, char *str);
int mvwgetch(WINDOW *win, int y, int x, char *str);
```

### **Parameters**

|            |                                                                                              |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>n</i>   | The maximum number of characters to read from input.                                         |
| <i>str</i> | A pointer to the area where the character string is to be placed.                            |
| <i>x</i>   | The <i>x</i> (column) coordinate of starting position of character string to be read.        |
| <i>y</i>   | The <i>y</i> (row) coordinate of starting position of character string to be read.           |
| <i>win</i> | A pointer to the window associated with the terminal from which the character is to be read. |

## **4-76 CURSES**

**Return Values**

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

**Description**

The **getstr()** and **wgetstr()** routines get a character string from the terminal associated with the window **stdscr** or window *win*, respectively. The **mvgetch()** and **mvwgetch()** routines move the cursor to the position specified in **stdscr** or *win*, respectively, then get a character.

These routines call **getch()** for each character until a newline or carriage return is received, at which time, the string is placed in *str*. The erase and kill characters set by the user are interpreted.

The **wgetnstr()** routine reads at most *n* characters. This routine is used to prevent overflowing the input buffer.

---

|             |                                                                                                        |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note</b> | The <b>getstr()</b> , <b>mvgetstr()</b> , <b>mvwgetstr()</b> and <b>wgetstr()</b> routines are macros. |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

---

**Implementation Considerations**

The **getstr()**, **mvgetstr()**, **mvwgetstr()**, and **wgetstr()** routines are identical to XPG/3. The **wgetnstr()** routine is a UNIX System V implementation.

**See Also**

**wgetch()**

**Portability**

The **getstr()**, **mvgetstr()**, **mvwgetstr()**, and **wgetstr()** routines conform to HP-UX, UNIX System V, and XPG/3. The **wgetnstr()** routine conforms to UNIX System V.

## getyx

---

### getyx getparyx getbegyx getmaxyx

The `getyx` set of routines is used to get positional information for a window.

#### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

void getyx(WINDOW *win, int y, int x);
void getparyx(WINDOW *win, int y, int x);
void getbegyx(WINDOW *win, int y, int x);
void getmaxyx(WINDOW *win, int y, int x);
```

#### Parameters

|            |                                                                       |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>win</i> | A pointer to the window from which to get positional information.     |
| <i>x</i>   | The integer in which to place <i>x</i> coordinate position of cursor. |
| <i>y</i>   | The integer in which to place <i>y</i> coordinate position of cursor. |

#### Return Values

None

#### Description

The `getyx()` routine returns the *x* and *y* coordinates of the cursor in *win*. The `getparyx()` routine returns the beginning coordinates of *win* relative to its parent window. If *win* is not a subwindow, `getparyx()` sets *x* and *y* to -1. The `getbegyx()` routine returns the beginning coordinates of *win* relative to the screen. The `getmaxyx()` routine returns the size of window *win*.

## 4-78 CURSES

---

**Note**                These routines are all macros. An ampersand (&) before the *y* and *x* variables is not necessary.

---

### **Implementation Considerations**

The `getyx()` routine is identical to XPG/3. The `getparyx()`, `getbegyx()`, and `getmaxyx()` routines are UNIX System V implementations.

### **Portability**

The `getyx()` routine conforms to HP-UX, UNIX System V, and XPG/3. The `getparyx()`, `getbegyx()`, and `getmaxyx()` routines conform to UNIX System V.



---

## halfdelay

The halfdelay routine is used to enable and disable the half-delay mode.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int halfdelay(int tenths);
```

### Parameters

*tenths*            The number of tenths of seconds for which to block input (1 to 255).

### Return Values

OK                Successful completion.

ERR              An error occurred.

### Description

The halfdelay() routine is similar to cbreak() in that when set, characters typed by the user are immediately processed by the program. The difference is that ERR is returned if no input is received after *tenths* tenths seconds.

The nocbreak() routine should be used to leave the half-delay mode.

### Implementation Considerations

UNIX System V implementation

### See Also

cbreak(), wgetch()

### Portability

UNIX System V

### 4-80 CURSES

**has\_color**  
**can\_change\_color**  
**color\_content**  
**pair\_content**

The `has_color` set of routines is used to get information about colors on terminal.

**Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

bool has_colors();
bool can_change_color();

int pair_content(short pair, short *fg, short *bg);
int color_content(short color, short *r, short *g, short *b);
```

**Parameters**

|              |                                                                                       |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>color</i> | The number of the color for which to provide information (0 to COLORS).               |
| <i>pair</i>  | The number of the color pair for which to provide information (1 to COLOR_PAIRS - 1). |
| <i>r</i>     | A pointer to the RGB value for the amount of red in color.                            |
| <i>g</i>     | A pointer to the RGB value for the amount of green in color.                          |
| <i>b</i>     | A pointer to the RGB value for the amount of blue in color.                           |
| <i>bg</i>    | A pointer to the number of the background color (0 to COLORS) in pair.                |
| <i>fg</i>    | A pointer to the number of the foreground color (0 to COLORS) in pair.                |

**has\_color**

## Return Values

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

## Description

The `has_colors()` routine returns **TRUE** if the terminal supports color. The `can_change_color()` routine returns **TRUE** if the terminal can support color and the colors can be changed. These routines are useful when writing terminal-independent programs; these routines could be used to determine whether to replace color with another attribute on a particular terminal.

The `color_content()` routine provides information on the amount of red, blue, and green in a particular color. The intensity of each color is stored in the addresses pointed to by *r*, *b*, and *g*, respectively. The values returned range from 0 (no component of that color) to 1000 (maximum amount of component).

The `pair_content()` routine provides information on what colors are in the specified color pair. The number of the foreground and background colors are stored in the addresses pointed to by *fg* and *bg*, respectively. The values stored in *fg* and *bg* range from 0 to `COLORS`. The color pair number, *pair*, ranges from 1 to `COLOR_PAIRS - 1`.

## Implementation Considerations

UNIX System V implementation

## See Also

`init_color()`, `init_pair()`, `start_color()`

## Portability

UNIX System V

---

**has\_ic**  
**has\_il**

The **has\_ic** and **has\_il** routines are used to determine insert and delete a character or line capability.

**Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

bool has_ic();
bool has_il();
```

**Return Values**

|              |                                                      |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>TRUE</b>  | Terminal has insert and delete capability.           |
| <b>FALSE</b> | Terminal does not have insert and delete capability. |

**Description**

The **has\_ic()** routine returns **TRUE** if the terminal has insert and delete character capability, and **FALSE** otherwise. Similarly, **has\_il()** returns **TRUE** if the terminal has insert and delete line capability, and **FALSE** otherwise.

**Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

**Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

---

## idlok

The `idlok` routine is used to enable the insert and delete line capability.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int idlok (WINDOW *win, bool bf);
```

### Parameters

|            |                                                                                   |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>bf</i>  | A Boolean expression.                                                             |
| <i>win</i> | A pointer to the window in which to enable the insert and delete line capability. |

### Return Values

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

### Description

The `idlok()` routine enables (*bf* is `TRUE`) or disables (*bf* is `FALSE`) the use of the insert and delete line capability of the terminal. By default, the use of insert and delete line is disabled because its use is undesirable for most applications. (Screen editor applications are one exception.) When disabled, `CURSES` redraws the changed portions of all lines.

### Implementation Considerations

Identical to XPG/3

## 4-84 CURSES

**idlok**

### **See Also**

`doupdate()`, `scroll()`, `wscrl()`

### **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

**CURSES 4-85**

---

## immedok

The `immedok` routine is used to call `wrefresh()` on changes to window.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int immedok(WINDOW *win, bool bf);
```

### Parameters

*win*                    A pointer to the window that is to be refreshed.  
*bf*                    A Boolean expression.

### Return Values

OK                    Successful completion.  
ERR                   An error occurred.

### Description

If *bf* is TRUE, `immedok()` calls `wrefresh()` if any change to the window image is made (for example, through routines such as `addch()`, `wclrtoobot()`, and `wscrl()`). Repeated calls to `wrefresh()` may affect performance negatively. The `immedok()` routine is disabled by default.

### Implementation Considerations

UNIX System V implementation

### See Also

`waddch()`, `wclrtoobot()`, `wrefresh()`, `wscrl()`

### Portability

UNIX System V

### 4-86 CURSES

**inch**  
**winch**  
**mvinch**  
**mvwinch**

The `inch` set of routines is used to return a character (with attributes).

**Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

chtype inch;
chtype winch(WINDOW *win);

chtype mvinch(int y, int x);
chtype mvwinch(WINDOW *win, int y, int x);
```

**Parameters**

|            |                                                                                   |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>ch</i>  | The character to be returned.                                                     |
| <i>win</i> | A pointer to the window that contains the character to be returned.               |
| <i>x</i>   | The <i>x</i> (column) coordinate of the position of the character to be returned. |
| <i>y</i>   | The <i>y</i> (row) coordinate of the position of the character to be returned.    |

**Return Values**

The `chtype` () character from the screen location.



**inch**

## Description

The `inch()` and `winch()` routines return the `chtype` character located at the current cursor position of the `stdscr` window and window *win*, respectively. The `mvinch()` and `mvwinch()` routines return the `chtype` character located at the position indicated by the *x* (column) and *y* (row) parameters (the former in the `stdscr` window; the latter in window *win*).

The complete character and attribute pair is returned. The character or attributes can be extracted by performing a bitwise **AND** on the returned value, using the constants `A_CHARTEXT`, `A_ATTRIBUTES`, and `A_COLOR` defined in `curses.h`.

---

**Note** All of these routines are macros.

---

## Implementation Considerations

Identical to XPG/3

## See Also

`waddch()`, `wattrset()`

## Portability

UNIX System V, XPG/3

**inchstr**  
**winchstr**  
**inchnstr**  
**winchnstr**  
**mvinchstr**  
**mvwinchstr**  
**mvinchnstr**  
**mvwinchnstr**

The `inchstr` set of routines is used to return a character string (with attributes).

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int inchstr(chtype *chstr);
int winchstr(WINDOW *win, chtype *chstr);

int inchnstr(chtype *chstr, int n);
int winchnstr(WINDOW *win, chtype *chstr, int n);

int mvinchstr(int y, int x, chtype *chstr);
int mvwinchstr(WINDOW *win, int y, int x, chtype *chstr);

int mvinchnstr(int y, int x, chtype *chstr, int n);
int mvwinchnstr(WINDOW *win, int y, int x, chtype *chstr, int n);
```

### Parameters

|              |                                                                      |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>n</i>     | The number of characters not to exceed when returning <i>chstr</i> . |
| <i>chstr</i> | The character string to be returned.                                 |
| <i>win</i>   | A pointer to the window in which the string is to be returned.       |

## **inchstr**

|          |                                                                                         |
|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>x</i> | The <i>x</i> (column) coordinate of the starting position of the string to be returned. |
| <i>y</i> | The <i>y</i> (row) coordinate of the starting position of the string to be returned.    |

## **Return Values**

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

## **Description**

The `inchstr()` and `winchstr()` routines return the character string (with attributes) starting at the current cursor position of the `stdscr` window and window *win*, respectively, and ending at the right margin. The `mvinchstr()` and `mvwinchstr()` routines return the character string located at the position indicated by the *x* (column) and *y* (row) parameters (the former in the `stdscr` window; the latter in window *win*).

The `inchnstr()`, `winchnstr()`, `mvinchnstr()`, and `mvwinchnstr()` routines return at most *n* characters from the window `stdscr` and *win*, respectively. The former two routines return the string, starting at the current cursor position; the latter two commands return the string, starting at the position specified by the *x* and *y* parameters.

The complete character/attribute pair is returned. The character or attributes can be extracted by performing a bitwise AND on the returned value, using the constants `A_CHARTEXT`, `A_ATTRIBUTES`, and `A_COLOR` defined in `curses.h`. The character string can also be returned without attributes by using `winstr()`.

---

|             |                                                          |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note</b> | All routines except <code>winchnstr()</code> are macros. |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------|

---

**inchstr**

## **Implementation Considerations**

UNIX System V implementation

## **See Also**

`winch()`, `winstr()`

## **Portability**

UNIX System V

**CURSES 4-91**

**init\_color**

---

## **init\_color** **init\_pair**

The `init_color` and `init_pair` routines are used to initialize a color pair.

---

|             |                                                                                                   |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note</b> | The <code>init_color</code> and <code>init_pair</code> routines are not implemented at this time. |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

---

### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int init_color(short color, short r, short g, short b);
int init_pair(short pair, short fg, short bg);
```

### **Parameters**

|              |                                                                                  |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>color</i> | The number of the color to be changed (0 to <code>COLORS</code> ).               |
| <i>pair</i>  | The number of the color pair to be changed (1 to <code>COLOR_PAIRS - 1</code> ). |
| <i>r</i>     | The RGB value for the amount of red in color (0 to 1000).                        |
| <i>g</i>     | The RGB value for the amount of green in color (0 to 1000).                      |
| <i>b</i>     | The RGB value for the amount of blue in color (0 to 1000).                       |
| <i>bg</i>    | The number of the background color (0 to <code>COLORS</code> ).                  |
| <i>fg</i>    | The number of the foreground color (0 to <code>COLORS</code> ).                  |

### **Return Values**

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

## **4-92 CURSES**

## **Description**

The `init_pair()` routine initializes a color pair so that the macro `COLOR_PAIR(n)` can be used as an attribute. Its first argument is the number of the color pair to be changed; the second argument is the number of the foreground color; the third argument is the number of the background color. The maximum number of color pairs and colors that the terminal can support are defined in the global variables `COLOR_PAIRS` and `COLORS`, respectively.

Each time that a color pair is initialized, the screen is refreshed and all occurrences of that color pair are updated to reflect the new definition.

The `init_color()` routine redefines the color using the number of the color and the RGB values for red, blue, and green as arguments.

The following default colors are defined in `curses.h`. (`CURSES` assumes that `COLOR_BLACK` is the default background color for all terminals.)

```
COLOR_BLACK
COLOR_RED
COLOR_GREEN
COLOR_YELLOW
COLOR_BLUE
COLOR_MAGENTA
COLOR_CYAN
COLOR_WHITE
```

Each time that a color is redefined with `init_color()`, the screen is refreshed, and all occurrences of that color are updated to reflect the new definition.

## **Implementation Considerations**

UNIX System V implementation

**init\_color**

### **See Also**

`can_change_color()`, `color_content()`, `has_color()`, `pair_content()`,  
`start_color()`

### **Portability**

UNIX System V

## initscr

The `initscr` routine is used to initialize single terminal environment.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

WINDOW *initscr();
```

### Return Values

On success, a pointer to `stdscr` is returned; otherwise, a null pointer is returned (for example, if the console could not be opened for write; the terminal could not be initialized; or memory could not be allocated for `stdscr`).

### Description

The `initscr()` routine initializes `CURSES` data structures, determines the terminal type, and makes sure that the first call to `refresh()` clears the screen. If the program interacts with only one terminal, this should be the first routine called.

If the program interacts with more than one terminal, `newterm()` should be called for each terminal instead of a single call to `initscr()`.

### Implementation Considerations

Identical to XPG/3

### See Also

`endwin()`, `is_endwin()`, `newterm()`, `set_term()`, `use_env()`

### Portability

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3



**insch**

---

**insch**  
**winsch**  
**mvinsch**  
**mvwinsch**

The **insch** set of routines is used to insert a character.

### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int insch(chtype ch);
int winsch(WINDOW *win, chtype ch);

int mvinsch(int y, int x, chtype ch);
int mvwinsch(WINDOW *win, int y, int x, chtype ch);
```

### **Parameters**

|            |                                                                    |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>ch</i>  | The character to be inserted.                                      |
| <i>win</i> | A pointer to the window in which the character is to be inserted.  |
| <i>x</i>   | The <i>x</i> (column) coordinate of the position of the character. |
| <i>y</i>   | The <i>y</i> (row) coordinate of the position of the character.    |

### **Return Values**

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

## Description

The `insch()` routine inserts the `chtype` character at the current cursor position of the `stdscr` window. The `winsch()` routine performs the identical action but in window *win*. The `mvinsch()` and `mvwinsch()` routines insert the character at the position indicated by the *x* (column) and *y* (row) parameters (the former in the `stdscr` window; the latter in window *win*). The cursor position does not change.

All characters to the right of the inserted character are moved right one character. The last character on the line is deleted.

---

|             |                                                       |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note</b> | All routines except <code>winsch()</code> are macros. |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------|

---

## Implementation Considerations

Identical to XPG/3

## See Also

`delch()`, `insstr()`

## Portability

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

**insdelln**

---

## **insdelln winsdelln**

The `insdelln` and `winsdelln` routines are used to insert or delete lines to or from the window.

### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int insdelln(int n);
int winsdelln(WINDOW *win, int n);
```

### **Parameters**

|            |                                                                                                 |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>win</i> | A pointer to the window in which to insert or delete a line.                                    |
| <i>n</i>   | The number of lines to insert or delete (positive <i>n</i> inserts; negative <i>n</i> deletes). |

### **Return Values**

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

### **Description**

The `insdelln()` and `winsdelln()` routines insert or delete blank lines in `stdscr` or *win*, respectively.

When *n* is positive, *n* lines are added above the current line, and the bottom *n* lines are cleared; when *n* is negative, *n* lines are deleted starting with the current line, and the remaining lines are moved up. The bottom *n* lines are cleared. The position of the cursor does not change.

**insdelln**

## **Implementation Considerations**

UNIX System V implementation

## **See Also**

`wdeleteln()`, `winsertln()`

## **Portability**

UNIX System V

**CURSES 4-99**

## **insertln**

---

## **insertln winsertln**

The `insertln` and `winsertln` routines are used to insert a line in a window.

### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int insertln();
int winsertln(WINDOW *win);
```

### **Parameters**

*win*                      A pointer to the window in which to insert the line.

### **Return Values**

OK                        Successful completion.

ERR                      An error occurred.

### **Description**

The `insertln()` and `winsertln()` routines insert a blank line above the current line in `stdscr` or *win*, respectively. The new line becomes the current line. All lines below the current line in the window are moved down one line. The bottom line in the window is discarded.

---

**Note**                    These routines are macros.

---

**insertln**

## **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

## **See Also**

`wbkgdset()`, `wdeleteln()`, `winsdelln()`

## **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

**CURSES 4-101**

**insstr**

---

**insstr**  
**winsstr**  
**insnstr**  
**winsnstr**  
**mvinsstr**  
**mvwinsstr**  
**mvinsnstr**  
**mvwinsnstr**

The **insstr** set of routines is used to insert a character string.

### **Syntax**

```
#include < curses.h>

int insstr(char *str);
int winsstr(WINDOW *win, char *str);

int insnstr(char *str, int n);
int winsnstr(WINDOW *win, char *str, int n);

int mvinsstr(int y, int x, char *str);
int mvwinsstr(WINDOW *win, int y, int x, char *str);

int mvinsnstr(int y, int x, char *str, int n);
int mvwinsnstr(WINDOW *win, int y, int x, char *str, int n);
```

### **Parameters**

|            |                                                                                                                               |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>str</i> | A pointer to the string to be inserted.                                                                                       |
| <i>n</i>   | The number of characters not to exceed when inserting <i>str</i> . If <i>n</i> is less than 0, the entire string is inserted. |
| <i>win</i> | A pointer to the window in which the string is to be inserted.                                                                |
| <i>x</i>   | The <i>x</i> (column) coordinate of the starting position of the string.                                                      |

### **4-102 CURSES**

*y*                      The *y* (row) coordinate of the starting position of the string.

## Return Values

OK                      Successful completion.

ERR                     An error occurred.

## Description

The `insstr()` routine inserts *str* at the current cursor position of the `stdscr` window. The `winsstr()` routine performs the identical action, but in window *win*. The `mvinsstr()` and `mvwinsstr()` routines insert the character string at the starting position indicated by the *x* (column) and *y* (row) parameters (the former to the `stdscr` window; the latter to window *win*).

The `insnstr()`, `winsnstr()`, `mvinsnstr()`, and `mvwinsnstr()` routines insert *n* characters to the window or as many as will fit on the line. If *n* is less than 0, the entire string is inserted, or as much of it as fits on the line. The former two routines place the string at the current cursor position; the latter two commands use the position specified by the *x* and *y* parameters.

All characters to the right of inserted characters are moved to the right. Characters that do not fit on the current line are discarded. The logical cursor is left at the point of insertion.

If a character in *str* is a newline, carriage return, backspace, or tab, the cursor is moved appropriately. The cursor is moved to the next tab stop for each tab character (tabs are eight characters apart). If the character is a control character other than those previously mentioned, the character is inserted using `^x` notation, where *x* is a printable character. The `clrtoeol()` routine is automatically done before a newline.

---

**Note**                      All routines except `winsnstr()` are macros.

---



**insstr**

## **Implementation Considerations**

UNIX System V implementation

## **See Also**

waddstr(), winsch()

## **Portability**

UNIX System V

**instr**  
**winstr**  
**innstr**  
**winnstr**  
**mvinstr**  
**mvwinstr**  
**mvinnstr**  
**mvwinnstr**

The `instr` set of routines is used to return a character string (without attributes).

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int instr(char *str);
int winstr(WINDOW *win, char *str);

int innstr(char *str, int n);
int winnstr(WINDOW *win, char *str, int n);

int mvinstr(int y, int x, char *str);
int mvwinstr(WINDOW *win, int y, int x, char *str);

int mvinnstr(int y, int x, char *str, int n);
int mvwinnstr(WINDOW *win, int y, int x, char *str, int n);
```

### Parameters

|            |                                                                                         |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>n</i>   | The number of characters not to exceed when returning <i>str</i> .                      |
| <i>str</i> | A character string to be returned.                                                      |
| <i>win</i> | A pointer to the window in which the string is to be returned.                          |
| <i>x</i>   | The <i>x</i> (column) coordinate of the starting position of the string to be returned. |

## **instr**

*y*                      The *y* (row) coordinate of the starting position of the string to be returned.

## **Return Values**

OK                      Successful completion.

ERR                     An error occurred.

## **Description**

The **instr()** and **winstr()** routines return the character string (without attributes) starting at the current cursor position of the **stdscr** window and window *win*, respectively, and ending at the right margin. The **mvinstr()** and **mvwinstr()** routines return the character string located at the position indicated by the *x* (column) and *y* (row) parameters (the former in the **stdscr** window; the latter in window *win*).

The **innstr()**, **winnstr()**, **mvinnstr()**, and **mvwinnstr()** routines return at most *n* characters from the window **stdscr** and *win*, respectively. The former two routines return the string starting at the current cursor position; the latter two commands return the string, starting at the position specified by the *x* and *y* parameters.

Only the character portion of the character/attribute pair is returned. To return the complete character/attribute pair, use **winchstr()**.

---

**Note**                      All routines except **winnstr()** are macros.

---

## **Implementation Considerations**

UNIX System V implementation

**instr**

### **See Also**

`winch()`, `winchstr()`

### **Portability**

UNIX System V

**CURSES 4-107**

---

## intrflush

The `intrflush` routine is used to flush output in `tty` on interrupt.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int intrflush(WINDOW *win, bool bf);
```

### Parameters

|            |                       |
|------------|-----------------------|
| <i>bf</i>  | A Boolean expression. |
| <i>win</i> | An ignored parameter. |

### Return Values

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

### Description

If this option is enabled (*bf* is `TRUE`), `intrflush()` flushes all output in the terminal driver when an interrupt, quit, or suspend character is sent to the terminal. This increases interrupt response time but causes `CURSES` to lose track of what currently exists on the screen. Whether this option is enabled or disabled by default depends on the `tty` driver.

---

|             |                                                  |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note</b> | The <code>intrflush()</code> routine is a macro. |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------|

---

**intrflush**

## **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

## **See Also**

`flushinp()`, `qiflush()`, `noqiflush()`

## **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

**CURSES 4-109**

---

## keyname

The `keyname` routine is used to return the character string for a key.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

char *keyname(int c);
```

### Parameters

*c*                      The key for which to get the name.

### Return Values

None

### Description

The `keyname()` routine returns a string pointer to the key name. Make a duplicate of the returned string if you plan to modify it.

### Implementation Considerations

UNIX System V implementation

### Portability

UNIX System V

## 4-110 CURSES

---

## keypad

The **keypad** routine is used to enable keypad handling.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int keypad(WINDOW *win, bool bf);
```

### Parameters

*win*                    A pointer to the window in which to enable keypad handling.  
*bf*                    A Boolean expression.

### Return Values

OK                    Successful completion.  
ERR                   An error occurred.

### Description

If *bf* is TRUE, **keypad()** handles special keys from the keyboard on the terminal associated with *win* as single values instead of character sequences. For example, if the user presses the right arrow key, **wgetch()** returns a single value, **KEY\_RIGHT**, that represents the function key; otherwise, **CURSES** handles the special keys as normal text.

See **wgetch()** for a list of tokens for function keys that are returned by **getch()**.

### Implementation Considerations

Identical to XPG/3



**keypad**

## **See Also**

`wgetch()`

## **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

---

## killchar

The `killchar` routine is used to return the current KILL character.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

char killchar();
```

### Return Values

The terminal's current KILL character is returned.

### Description

The `killchar()` routine returns the user's choice of KILL character from the tty driver. This character is used to start a new line of input when the current input is considered erroneous. The returned value can be used when including deletion capability in interactive programs.

### Implementation Considerations

Identical to XPG/3

### See Also

`erasechar()`, `wgetnstr()`

### Portability

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

---

## leaveok

The `leaveok` routine is used to ignore cursor relocation.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int leaveok(WINDOW *win, bool bf);
```

### Parameters

|            |                                                                        |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>win</i> | A pointer to the window in which to ignore the position of the cursor. |
| <i>bf</i>  | A Boolean expression.                                                  |

### Return Values

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

### Description

If *bf* is `TRUE`, `leaveok()` leaves the cursor in a position that `CURSES` finds convenient at the time that the window is refreshed. Normally, when a window is refreshed, `leaveok()` is disabled and the cursor is mapped from the logical window to the same location in the physical window.

Enabling `leaveok()` is useful when the cursor is not used or is not important in the application. Reducing cursor movements simplifies program interaction.

Once `leaveok()` is set to `TRUE`, it remains enabled until another call sets it to `FALSE` or until the program terminates.

## 4-114 CURSES

**leaveok**

## **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

## **See Also**

wrefresh()

## **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

**CURSES 4-115**

---

## longname

The `longname` routine is used to return the full terminal type name.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>
```

```
char *longname();
```

### Return Values

On success, pointer to verbose description of terminal is returned; otherwise, a null pointer is returned.

### Description

The `longname()` routine returns a pointer to a static area containing a verbose description (128 characters or less) of the terminal. The area is defined after calls to `initscr()`, `newterm()`, or `setupterm()`. The value should be saved if `longname()` is going to be used with multiple terminals since it is overwritten with a new value after each call to `setupterm()`.

### Implementation Considerations

Identical to XPG/3

### See Also

`initscr()`, `newterm()`, `setupterm()`

### Portability

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

---

## meta

The `meta` routine is used to control the number of bits returned on input.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int meta(WINDOW *win, bool bf);
```

### Parameters

|            |                       |
|------------|-----------------------|
| <i>bf</i>  | A Boolean expression. |
| <i>win</i> | An ignored parameter. |

### Return Values

|     |                                                                                |
|-----|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion.                                                         |
| ERR | An error occurred. The terminal or system cannot handle 8-bit character codes. |

### Description

Whether a terminal returns 7 or 8 significant bits initially depends on the control mode of the terminal driver. The `meta()` routine forces the number of bits to be returned by `getch()` to be 7 (if *bf* is `FALSE`) or 8 (if *bf* is `TRUE`).

---

|             |                                                                                                                  |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note</b> | If the program handling the data can pass only 7-bit characters or strips the 8th bit, 8 bits cannot be handled. |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

---

If the `terminfo` capabilities `smm` (`meta_on`) and `rmm` (`meta_off`) are defined for the terminal, `smm` is sent to the terminal when `meta(win, TRUE)` is called, and `rmm` is sent when `meta(win, FALSE)` is called.

This routine is useful when extending the nontext command set in applications where the `META` key is used.

## **meta**

---

|             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note</b> | The <code>meta()</code> routine is provided for compatability with older <code>CURSES</code> packages. The MPE/iX <code>CURSES</code> package handles 16-bit characters, therefore making this function unnecessary. |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

---

## **Implementation Considerations**

HP-UX and UNIX System V implementations

## **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V

---

## move wmove

The `move` and `wmove` routines are used to move the cursor in the window.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int move(int y, int x);
int wmove(WINDOW *win, int y, int x);
```

### Parameters

|            |                                                                               |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>win</i> | A pointer to the window in which the cursor is to be written.                 |
| <i>x</i>   | The <i>x</i> (column) coordinate of the position of the cursor in the window. |
| <i>y</i>   | The <i>y</i> (row) coordinate of the position of the cursor in the window.    |

### Return Values

|     |                                                               |
|-----|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion.                                        |
| ERR | An error occurred. The cursor is outside the window boundary. |

### Description

The `move()` routine moves the logical cursor (for `stdscr`) to the position specified by *y* (row) and *x* (column), where the upper-left corner of the window is row 0, column 0. The `wmove()` routine performs the same action, but moves the cursor in the window specified by *win*. The physical cursor does not move until after a call to `wrefresh()` or `doupdate()`.

---

|             |                                             |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note</b> | The <code>move()</code> routine is a macro. |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------|

---



**move**

## **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

## **See Also**

`doupdate()`, `wrefresh()`

## **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

## mvcur

The `mvcur` routine is used to move the cursor (interface to `terminfo`).

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int mvcur (int oldrow, int oldcol, int newrow, int newcol);
```

### Parameters

|               |                                              |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>oldrow</i> | The row from which cursor is to be moved.    |
| <i>oldcol</i> | The column from which cursor is to be moved. |
| <i>newrow</i> | The row to which cursor is to be moved.      |
| <i>newcol</i> | The column to which cursor is to be moved.   |

### Return Values

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

### Description

The `mvcur()` routine is a low-level routine used only outside of `CURSES` when the program has to deal directly with the database to handle certain terminal capabilities. The use of appropriate `CURSES` routines is recommended in all other situations.

The `mvcur()` routine moves the cursor from the location specified by *oldrow* and *oldcol* to the location specified by *newrow* and *newcol*. The program must keep track of the current cursor position. All output will be sent to `stdout` through `_putchar()`

**mvcur**

## **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

## **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V

**4-122 CURSES**

## mvwin

The `mvwin` routine is used to move a window.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int mvwin(WINDOW *win, int y, int x);
```

### Parameters

|            |                                                                             |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>win</i> | A pointer to the window to move.                                            |
| <i>y</i>   | The <i>y</i> (row) coordinate of the upper-left corner of the window.       |
| <i>x</i>   | is the <i>x</i> (column) coordinate of the upper-left corner of the window. |

### Return Values

|     |                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion.                                                                                                                                            |
| ERR | An error occurred. The move places part of or all of window outside the screen boundary (or, in the case of a subwindow, outside its parent window's boundaries.) |

### Description

The `mvwin()` routine moves the specified window (or subwindow), placing its upper left corner at the positions specified by *x* and *y*. The entire window must fit within the physical boundaries of the screen, or an error results. A subwindow must fit within the boundaries of its parent window.

**mvwin**

## **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

## **See Also**

`newwin()`, `subwin()`

## **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

**napms**

---

**napms**

---

**Note**      The `napms()` routine is not implemented at this time.

---

**CURSES 4-125**

---

## newpad

The `newpad` routine is used to create a new pad.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

WINDOW *newpad(int nlines, int ncols);
```

### Parameters

|               |                                      |
|---------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>nlines</i> | The number of lines in the window.   |
| <i>ncols</i>  | The number of columns in the window. |

### Return Values

On success, a pointer to the new window structure is returned; otherwise, a null pointer is returned.

### Description

The `newpad()` routine creates a new pad with the specified number of lines and columns. A pointer to the new pad structure is returned. A pad differs from a window in that it is not restricted to the size of the physical screen. It is useful when only part of a large window will be displayed at any one time.

Automatic refreshes by scrolling or echoing of input do not take place when pads are used. Pads have their own refresh commands, `prefresh()` and `pnoutrefresh()`. These contain additional parameters for specifying what part of the pad to display and where to display it on the screen.

### Implementation Considerations

Identical to XPG/3

**newpad**

### **See Also**

`pnoutrefresh()`, `prefresh()`

### **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

**CURSES 4-127**



---

## newterm

The `newterm` routine is used to open a new terminal.

### Syntax

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <curses.h>
SCREEN *newterm(char *type, FILE *outfp, FILE *infp);
```

### Parameters

|              |                                                                                |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>type</i>  | A string defining the terminal type to be used in place of <code>TERM</code> . |
| <i>outfp</i> | A pointer to a file to be used for output to the terminal.                     |
| <i>infp</i>  | The pointer to a file to be used for input to the terminal.                    |

### Return Values

On success, a pointer to new `SCREEN` structure is returned; otherwise, a null pointer is returned.

### Description

The `newterm()` routine opens a new terminal with each call. It should be used instead of `initscr()` when the program interacts with more than one terminal. It returns a variable of type `SCREEN`, which should be used for later reference to that terminal. Before program termination, `endwin()` should be called for each terminal.

### Implementation Considerations

Identical to XPG/3

**newterm**

### **See Also**

`delscreen()`, `endwin()`, `initscr()`

### **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

**CURSES 4-129**

---

## newwin

The `newwin` routine is used to create a window.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

WINDOW *newwin(int nlines, int ncols, int begin_y, int begin_x);
```

### Parameters

|                |                                                                                          |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>nlines</i>  | The number of lines in the new window.                                                   |
| <i>ncols</i>   | The number of columns in the new window.                                                 |
| <i>begin_y</i> | The <i>y</i> (row) coordinate of the position of the upper left corner of window.        |
| <i>begin_x</i> | The <i>x</i> (column) coordinate of the position of the upper left corner of the window. |

### Return Values

On success, pointer to new window structure is returned; otherwise, a null pointer is returned.

### Description

The `newwin()` routine creates a new window with the specified number of lines and columns and upper left corner positioned at *begin\_x*, *begin\_y*. A pointer to the new window structure is returned. A full-screen window can be created by calling `newwin(0,0,0,0)`.

If the number of lines specified is zero, `newwin()` uses the default `LINES` minus *begin\_y*; if the number of columns specified is zero, `newwin()` uses the default `COLS` minus *begin\_x*.

---

**Note**           The `newwin()` routine is a macro.

---

## **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

## **See Also**

`delwin()`, `derwin()`, `dupwin()`, `mvwin()`, `subwin()`, `touchwin()`

## **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

**nl**

---

## **nl nonl**

The **nl** and **nonl** routines are used to enable and disable newline control.

### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int nl();
int nonl();
```

### **Return Values**

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

### **Description**

The **nl()** routine enables the handling of newlines. The **nl()** routine converts newline into carriage return and line feed on output and converts carriage return into newline on input. The **nonl()** routine disables the handling of newlines.

The handling of newlines is initially enabled. Disabling the handling of newlines results in faster cursor motion since **CURSES** can use the line-feed capability more efficiently.

### **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

### **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

## **4-132 CURSES**

## nodelay

The `nodelay` routine is used to set blocking or non-blocking read.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int nodelay(WINDOW *win, bool bf);
```

### Parameters

|            |                                                          |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>bf</i>  | A Boolean expression.                                    |
| <i>win</i> | A pointer to the window in which to enable non-blocking. |

### Return Values

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

### Description

If enabled (*bf* is `TRUE`), `nodelay()` causes `getch()` to return `ERR` if no input is ready. When disabled, `getch()` blocks until a key is pressed.

---

|             |                                                |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note</b> | The <code>nodelay()</code> routine is a macro. |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------|

---

### Implementation Considerations

Identical to XPG/3

**nodelay**

## **See Also**

`wgetch()`, `wtimeout()`

## **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

---

## **notimeout**

The `notimeout` routine is used to disable the timer used by `getch()`.

### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int notimeout(WINDOW *win, bool bf);
```

### **Parameters**

*bf*                      A Boolean expression.

### **Return Values**

OK                      Successful completion.  
ERR                      An error occurred.

### **Description**

If `bool` is `TRUE`, `notimeout()` disables a timer used by `getch()` when interpreting escape character sequences.

When `bool` is `FALSE` and keypad handling is enabled, a timer is set by `wgetch()` to handle characters received that could be the beginning of a function key (for example, ESC). If the remainder of the sequence is not received before the time expires, the character is returned; otherwise, the value of the function key is returned. If `notimeout()` is set to `TRUE`, the timer is not set and all characters are returned as single values.

---

**Note**                      The `notimeout()` routine is a macro.

---



**notimeout**

## **Implementation Considerations**

UNIX System V implementation

## **See Also**

`keypad()`, `wgetch()`

## **Portability**

UNIX System V

## overlay overwrite

The `overlay` and `overwrite` routines are used to overlap or overwrite windows.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int overlay(WINDOW *srcwin, WINDOW *dstwin);
int overwrite(WINDOW *srcwin, WINDOW *dstwin);
```

### Parameters

|               |                                                                    |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>srcwin</i> | A pointer to the source window to be copied.                       |
| <i>dstwin</i> | A pointer to the destination window to be overlaid or overwritten. |

### Return Values

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

### Description

The `overwrite()` and `overlay()` routines copy *srcwin* to *dstwin*. The source window (*srcwin*) and destination window (*dstwin*) do not have to be the same size.

The `overwrite()` routine copies all characters to *dstwin*; thus, destroying all previous contents of the window. The `overlay()` routine copies only nonblank characters, leaving blank characters intact. Thus, if the background character of the original window was set to something other than a blank, this original background could be preserved.

The example shown on the following pages illustrates how to use `overwrite()` to implement a pop-up dialog box.

## overlay

```
#include <curses.h>

/*
 * Pop-up a window on top of curscr. If row and/or col
 * are -1 then that dimension will be centered within
 * curscr. Return 0 for success or -1 if malloc() failed.
 * Pass back the working window and the saved window for the
 * pop-up. The saved window should not be modified.
 */
int
popup(work, save, nrows, ncols, row, col)
WINDOW **work, **save;
int nrows, ncols, row, col;
{
 int mr, mc;
 getmaxyx(curscr, mr, mc);
 /* Windows are limited to the size of curscr. */
 if (mr < nrows)
 nrows = mr;
 if (mc < ncols)
 ncols = mc;
 /* Center dimensions. */
 if (row == -1)
 row = (mr-nrows)/2;
 if (col == -1)
 col = (mc-ncols)/2;
 /* The window must fit entirely in curscr. */
 if (mr < row+nrows)
 row = 0;
 if (mc < col+ncols)
 col = 0;
 *work = newwin(nrows, ncols, row, col);
 if (*work == NULL)
 return (-1);
 if ((*save = dupwin(*work)) == NULL) {
 delwin(*work);
 return (-1);
 }
}
```

```

 }
 overwrite(curscr, *save);
 return (0);
}

/*
 * Restore the region covered by a popup window.
 * Delete the working window and the saved window.

 * This function is the complement to popup(). Return
 * 0 for success or -1 for an error.
 */
int
popdown(work, save)
WINDOW *work, *save;
{
 (void) overwrite(save, curscr);
 (void) delwin(save);
 (void) delwin(work);
 return (0);
}

/*
 * Compute the size of a dialog box that would fit around
 * the string.
 */
void
dialsize(str, nrows, ncols)
char *str;
int *nrows, *ncols;

```

## overlay

```
{
 int rows, cols, col;
 for (rows = 1, cols = col = 0; *str != ' '; ++str) {
 if (*str == '0') {
 if (cols < col)
 cols = col;
 col = 0;
 ++rows;
 } else {
 ++col;
 }
 }
 if (cols < col)
 cols = col;
 *nrows = rows;
 *ncols = cols;
}

/*
 * Write a string into a dialog box.
 */
void
dialfill(w, s)
WINDOW *w;
char *s;
{
 int row;
 (void) wmove(w, 1, 1);
 for (row = 1; *s != ' '; ++s) {
 (void) waddch(w, *((unsigned char*) s));
 if (*s == '0')
 wmove(w, ++row, 1);
 }
 box(w, 0, 0);
}
```

## 4-140 CURSES

```
}

void
dialog(str)
char *str;
{
 WINDOW *work, *save;
 int nrows, ncols, row, col;

 /* Figure out size of window. */
 dialsize(str, &nrows, &ncols);

 /* Create a centered working window with extra */
 /* room for a border. */
 (void) popup(&work, &save, nrows+2, ncols+2, -1, -1);

 /* Write text into the working window. */
 dialfill(work, str);

 /* Pause. Remember that wgetch() will do a wrefresh() */
 /* for us. */
 (void) wgetch(work);

 /* Restore curscr and free windows. */
 (void) popdown(work, save);

 /* Redraw curscr to remove window from physical screen. */
 (void) doupdate();
}
```

**overlay**

### **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

### **See Also**

`copywin()`

### **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

**pair\_content**

---

## **pair\_content**

---

**Note**        The `pair_content` routine is not implemented at this time.

---

**CURSES 4-143**



## **prefresh**

---

### **prefresh pnoutrefresh**

The `prefresh` and `pnoutrefresh` routines are used to copy the pad data structure to a physical window.

#### **Syntax**

```
#include < curses.h>
```

```
int prefresh(WINDOW *pad, int pminrow, int pmincol, int sminrow,
 int smincol, int smaxrow, int smaxcol);
```

```
int pnoutrefresh(WINDOW *pad, int pminrow, int pmincol, int sminrow,
 int smincol, int smaxrow, int smaxcol);
```

#### **Parameters**

|                |                                                                                                                            |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>pad</i>     | A pointer to the pad to refresh.                                                                                           |
| <i>pmincol</i> | The column coordinate of the upper-left corner of the pad rectangle to be copied.                                          |
| <i>pminrow</i> | The row coordinate of the upper-left corner of the pad rectangle to be copied                                              |
| <i>smincol</i> | The column coordinate of the upper-left corner of the rectangle on the physical screen where pad is to be positioned.      |
| <i>sminrow</i> | The row coordinate of the upper-left corner of the rectangle on the physical screen where pad is to be positioned.         |
| <i>smaxcol</i> | The column coordinate of the lower-right corner of the rectangle on the physical screen where the pad is to be positioned. |
| <i>smaxrow</i> | The row coordinate of the lower-right corner of the rectangle on the physical screen where the pad is to be positioned.    |

## **4-144 CURSES**

**Return Values**

|       |                        |
|-------|------------------------|
| OK    | Successful completion. |
| ERROR | An error occurred.     |

**Description**

The **prefresh()** routine copies the specified portion of the logical pad to the terminal screen. The parameters *pmincol* and *pminrow* specify the upper-left corner of the rectangular area of the pad to be displayed. The lower-right coordinate of the rectangular area of the pad that is to be displayed is calculated from the screen parameters (*sminrow*, *smincol*, *smaxrow*, and *smaxcol*).

This routine calls the **pnoutrefresh()** routine to copy the specified portion of pad to the terminal screen and the **doupdate()** routine to do the actual update. The logical cursor is copied to the same location in the physical window unless **leavok()** is enabled (in which case, the cursor is placed in a position that the program finds convenient).

When outputting several pads at once, it is often more efficient to call the **pnoutrefresh()** and **doupdate()** routines directly. A call to **pnoutrefresh()** for each pad first, followed by only one call to **doupdate()** to update the screen, results in one burst of output, fewer characters sent, and less CPU time used.

**Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

**See Also**

**doupdate()**, **leaveok()**, **newpad()**,

**Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

## **printw**

---

**printw**  
**wprintw**  
**mvprintw**  
**mvwprintw**  
**vwprintw**

The `printw` set of routines is used to perform a formatted write to a window.

### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int printw(char *fmt [,arg...]);
int wprintw(WINDOW *win, char *fmt[,arg...]);

int mvprintw(int y, int x, char *fmt [,arg...]);
int mvwprintw(WINDOW *win, int y, int x, char *fmt [,arg...])

#include <stdarg.h>

vwprintw(WINDOW *win, char *fmt, va_list arglist);
```

### **Parameters**

|                             |                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>fmt</i> [,arg...]        | A <code>printf()</code> format string where <i>arg</i> is zero or more arguments used to satisfy the <code>printf()</code> string. |
| <i>fmt</i> , <i>arglist</i> | A <code>vprintf()</code> format string where <i>arglist</i> is a pointer to a list of arguments.                                   |
| <i>win</i>                  | A pointer to the window in which the string is to be written.                                                                      |
| <i>x</i>                    | The <i>x</i> (column) coordinate position of the string's placement in the window.                                                 |
| <i>y</i>                    | The <i>y</i> (row) coordinate position of the string's placement in the window.                                                    |

## **4-146 CURSES**

## **Return Values**

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

## **Description**

These routines are functionally equivalent to **printf()**. Characters are written to the window using **waddch()**.

With **printw()** and **wprintw()**, the characters are written to **stdscr** and *win*, respectively. The **mvprintw()** and **mvwprintw()** routines position the cursor as specified in **stdscr** or *win*, respectively, and then call **printw()**. The **vwprintw()** routine writes to the window.

## **Implementation Considerations**

The **printw()**, **wprintw()**, **mvprintw()**, and **mvwprintw()** routines are identical to XPG/3. The **vwprintw()** routine is a UNIX System V implementation.

## **See Also**

**waddch()**

## **Portability**

The **printw()**, **wprintw()**, **mvprintw()**, and **mvwprintw()** routines conform to HP-UX, UNIX System V and XPG/3. The **vwprintw()** routine conforms to UNIX System V.

**qiflush**

---

## **qiflush noqiflush**

The `qiflush` and `noqiflush` set of routines is used to control the flush of input and output on interrupt.

### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

void qiflush();
void noqiflush();
```

### **Return Values**

None

### **Description**

The `qiflush()` routine flushes input and output queues when an interrupt, quit, or suspend character is sent to the terminal. The `noqiflush()` routine does not flush input and output queues when these characters are sent.

### **Implementation Considerations**

UNIX System V implementation

### **See Also**

`flushinp()`, `intrflush()`

### **Portability**

UNIX System V

---

**raw**  
**noraw**

The **raw** and **noraw** routines are used to enable and disable the raw-mode operation.

**Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int raw();
int noraw();
```

**Return Values**

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

**Description**

The **raw()** and **noraw()** routines enable and disable raw-mode operation, respectively. These routines are similar to **cbreak()** and **nocbreak()** in that **raw()** immediately processes characters typed by the user, and **noraw()** restores the previous state. The difference is that **raw()** passes through quit, interrupt, suspend, and flow control characters (QUIT, INTR, SUSP, STOP, START) as normal text without generating a signal. The behavior of the **BREAK** key varies depending on the terminal.

**Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

**raw**

### **See Also**

`cbreak()`, `wgetch()`, `halfdelay()`, `nodelay()`, `wtimeout()`

### **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

**4-150 CURSES**

## redrawwin wredrawln

The `redrawwin` and `wredrawln` routines are used to redraw the screen or portion of the screen.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int redrawwin(WINDOW *win);
int wredrawln(WINDOW *win, int beg_line, int num_lines);
```

### Parameters

|                  |                                             |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>win</i>       | A pointer to the window in which to redraw. |
| <i>beg_line</i>  | The first line to redraw.                   |
| <i>num_lines</i> | The number of lines to redraw.              |

### Return Values

|       |                        |
|-------|------------------------|
| OK    | Successful completion. |
| ERROR | An error occurred.     |

### Description

The `redrawwin()` and `wredrawln()` routines force portions of a window to be redrawn to the terminal. These routines are useful when the data that exists on the screen is believed to be corrupt and for applications such as screen editors that redraw portions of the screen.

---

|             |                                                  |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note</b> | The <code>redrawwin()</code> routine is a macro. |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------|

---



**redrawwin**

## **Implementation Considerations**

UNIX System V implementation

## **Portability**

UNIX System V

**4-152 CURSES**

**refresh**  
**wrefresh**  
**doupdate**  
**wnoutrefresh**

The **refresh** set of routines is used to copy a window data structure to a physical window.

**Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int refresh();
int wrefresh(WINDOW *win);

int doupdate();

int wnoutrefresh(WINDOW *win);
```

**Parameters**

*win*                      A pointer to the window in which to refresh.

**Return Values**

OK                      Successful completion.  
ERROR                  An error occurred.

**Description**

The **refresh()** and **wrefresh()** routines copy **stdscr** and *win*, respectively, to the terminal screen. These routines call the **wnoutrefresh()** routine to copy the specified window to *curscr* and the **doupdate()** routine to do the actual update. The physical cursor is mapped to the same position as the logical cursor of the last window to update *curscr*, unless **leaveok()** is enabled (in which case, the cursor is placed in a position that **CURSES** finds convenient).

## **refresh**

When outputting several windows at once, it is often more efficient to call the `wnoutrefresh()` and `doupdate()` routines directly. A call to `wnoutrefresh()` for each window first, followed by only one call to `doupdate()` to update the screen, results in one burst of output, fewer characters sent, and less CPU time used.

If the *win* parameter to `wrefresh()` is global variable *curscr*, the screen is immediately cleared and repainted from scratch.

## **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

## **See Also**

`leaveok()`, `pnoutrefresh()`, `prefresh()`, `redrawln()`, `redrawwin()`

## **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

**reset\_prog\_mode**  
**reset\_shell\_mode**

The `reset_prog_mode` and `reset_shell_mode` routines are used to reset the terminal modes.

**Syntax**

```
#include < curses.h>

int reset_prog_mode();
int reset_shell_mode();
```

**Return Values**

OK                      Successful completion.

**Description**

The `reset_prog_mode()` and `reset_shell_mode()` routines reset the current terminal modes to “program” (within `CURSES`) or “shell” (outside `CURSES`). The reset is done automatically by `endwin()` and by `doupdate()` after a call to `endwin()`.

**Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

**Portability**

UNIX System V, XPG/3

## **resetty**

---

## **resetty savetty**

The **resetty** and **savetty** routines are used to restore and save terminal modes.

### **Syntax**

```
#include < curses.h>
```

```
int resetty();
int savetty();
```

### **Return Values**

OK                      Successful completion.

ERR                     An error occurred.

### **Description**

The **savetty()** and **resetty()** routines are low-level routines typically used within library routines. The **savetty()** and **resetty()** routines save and restore the terminal state, respectively. The **savetty()** routine saves the current state in a buffer; the **resetty()** routine restores the state to that stored in the buffer at the time of the last **savetty()** call.

### **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

### **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

---

**scanw**  
**wscanw**  
**mvscanw**  
**mvwscanw**  
**vwscanw**

The `scanw` set of routines is used to perform a formatted read from a window.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int scanw(char *fmt [,arg...]);
int wscanw(WINDOW *win, char *fmt [,arg...]);

int mvscanw(int y, int x, char *fmt[,arg...]);
int mvwscanw(WINDOW *win, int y, int x, char *fmt[,arg...])

#include <stdarg.h>

vwscanw(WINDOW *win, char *fmt, va_list arglist);
```

### Parameters

|                             |                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>fmt</i> [,arg...]        | A <b>vwscanw()</b> format string, where <i>arg</i> is zero or more arguments used to satisfy the <b>scanf()</b> string.                |
| <i>fmt</i> , <i>arglist</i> | A <b>vscan()</b> format string, where <i>arglist</i> is a pointer to zero or more arguments used to satisfy the <b>scanf()</b> string. |
| <i>win</i>                  | A pointer to the window in which the character is to be read.                                                                          |
| <i>x</i>                    | The <i>x</i> (column) coordinate of the position of the character to be read.                                                          |
| <i>y</i>                    | The <i>y</i> (row) coordinate of the position of the character to be read.                                                             |

## **scanw**

### **Return Values**

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

### **Description**

These routines are functionally equivalent to `scanf()`. Characters are read from the window using `wgetstr()`. When a newline is received, the line is processed by `scanw()`, which places the result in the appropriate *args*.

With `scanw()` and `wscanw()`, the characters are read from `stdscr` and *win*, respectively. The `mvscanw()` and `mvwscanw()` routines position the cursor in the window and then call `scanw()`. The `vwscanw()` routine reads from the window using the *stdargs* variable list.

### **Implementation Considerations**

The `scanw()`, `wscanw()`, `mvscanw()`, and `mvwscanw()` routines are identical to XPG/3. The `vwscanw()` routine is a UNIX System V implementation.

### **See Also**

`wgetstr()`

### **Portability**

The `scanw()`, `wscanw()`, `mvscanw()`, and `mvwscanw()` routines conform to HP-UX, UNIX System V and XPG/3. The `vwscanw()` routine conforms to UNIX System V.

## scr\_dump scr\_restore

The `scr_dump` and `scr_restore` routines are used to write the screen contents to and from a file.

### Syntax

```
#include < curses.h>

int scr_dump(char *filename);
int scr_restore(char *filename);
```

### Parameters

*filename*            A pointer to the file in which screen contents are written.

### Return Values

OK                    Successful completion.  
ERR                   An error occurred.

### Description

The `scr_dump()` routine writes the contents of the virtual screen, *curscr*, to *filename*. The `scr_restore()` routine writes the contents of *filename* (which must have been written with `scr_dump()`) to *curscr*. The next call to `doupdate()` restores the screen to the way it looks in *filename*.

### Implementation Considerations

UNIX System V implementation



**scr\_dump**

## **See Also**

wrefresh()

## **Portability**

UNIX System V

---

**srl  
wsrl  
scrl**

The **srl** set of routines is used to scroll a window.

**Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int srl (int n);
int wsrl (WINDOW *win, int n);

int scroll (WINDOW *win);
```

**Parameters**

*win*                    A pointer to the window in which to scroll.  
*n*                      The number and direction of lines to scroll.

**Return Values**

OK                      Successful completion.  
ERR                     An error occurred.

**Description**

The **scroll()** routine scrolls the window *win* up one line. The current cursor position is not changed.

The **srl()** and **wsrl()** routines scroll the window **stdscr** or *win* up or down *n* lines, where *n* is a positive or negative integer, respectively.

The **scrollok()** routine must be enabled for these routines to work.

---

**Note**                    The **scroll()** and **srl()** routines are macros.

---

**src1**

### **Implementation Considerations**

The `scroll()` routine is identical to XPG/3. The `wscrl()` and `scrl()` routines are UNIX System V implementations.

### **See Also**

`scrollok()`, `waddch()`

### **Portability**

The `scroll()` routine conforms to HP-UX, UNIX System V, and XPG/3. The `wscrl()` and `scrl()` routines conform to UNIX System V.

## **scrollok**

The **scrollok** routine is used to enable scrolling of the screen.

### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int scrollok (WINDOW *win, bool bf);
```

### **Parameters**

*bf*                      A Boolean expression.

*win*                     A pointer to the window in which to enable scrolling.

### **Return Values**

OK                        Successful completion.

ERR                      An error occurred.

### **Description**

The **scrollok()** routine controls what happens when the cursor advances outside the bottom boundary of a window or scrolling region. When enabled, if the cursor advances outside the bottom boundary of a window or scrolling region, a call to **wscrl()** scrolls up one line and updates the screen. If **scrollok()** is disabled, a call to the **wscrl()** routine leaves the cursor on the bottom of the line.

The terminal screen produces a scrolling effect if **idlok()** is also enabled.

### **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

**scrollok**

### **See Also**

`idlok()`, `scroll()`, `waddch()`, `wscrl()`

### **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

## set\_curterm

The `set_curterm` routine is used to set the *cur\_term* variable (interface to `terminfo`).

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int set_curterm (TERMINAL *nterm);
```

### Parameters

*nterm*                The terminal type for which the variable is set.

### Return Values

OK                    Successful completion.  
ERR                   An error occurred.

### Description

The `set_curterm()` routine is a low-level routine used only outside of `CURSES` when the program has to deal directly with the `terminfo` database to handle certain terminal capabilities. The use of appropriate `CURSES` routines is recommended in all other situations.

The `set_curterm()` routine sets the *cur\_term* variable to *nterm*. The values from *nterm* as well as other state information for the terminal are used by `terminfo` functions such as `mvcur()`, `tigetflag()`, `tigetstr()`, and `tigetnum()`.

### Implementation Considerations

UNIX System V implementation

**set\_curterm**

### **See Also**

`del_curterm()`

### **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V

## set\_term

The `set_term` routine is used to switch between terminals.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

SCREEN *set_term (SCREEN *new);
```

### Parameters

*new*                    The new terminal to which to switch.

### Return Values

On success, a pointer to the previous terminal is returned; otherwise, a null pointer is returned.

### Description

The `set_term()` routine switches to the terminal specified by *new* and returns a screen reference to the previous terminal. Calls to subsequent `CURSES` routines affect the new terminal.

### Implementation Considerations

Identical to XPG/3

### Portability

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3



---

## setscrreg

The `setscrreg` routine is used to set the scrolling region in a window.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int setscrreg (int top, int bot);
int wsetscrreg (WINDOW *win, int top, int bot);
```

### Parameters

|            |                                                                        |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>bot</i> | The bottom line of the scrolling region (top of the window is line 0). |
| <i>top</i> | The top line of the scrolling region (top of the window is line 0).    |
| <i>win</i> | A pointer to the window in which to set up the scroll window.          |

### Return Values

None

### Description

The `setscrreg()` and `wsetscrreg()` routines set up scrolling regions in the windows `stdscr` and *win*, respectively. The dimensions of the scrolling region are defined by the *top* and *bot* parameters. If `scrollok()` is active, any attempt to move the cursor beyond the bottom margin of the scrolling region scrolls the text in the scrolling region up one line.

The terminal screen produces a scrolling effect if `idlok()` is also enabled.

**setscrreg**

## **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

## **See Also**

`idlok()`, `scroll()`, `scrollok()`, `waddch()`, `wscrl()`

## **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

**CURSES 4-169**

## setupterm

---

### setupterm setterm

The `setupterm` and `setterm` routines are used to define a set of terminal-dependent variables (`terminfo` interface).

#### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int setupterm (char *term, int fildes, int *errret);
int setterm (char *term);
```

#### Parameters

|               |                                                              |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>term</i>   | The terminal type for which variables are set.               |
| <i>fildes</i> | A file descriptor initialized for output.                    |
| <i>errret</i> | A pointer to an integer in which the status value is stored. |

#### Return Values

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

#### Description

Within `CURSES`, `setupterm()` is automatically called by `initscr()` and `newterm()`. This routine can be also be used outside of `CURSES` when the program has to deal directly with the `TERMINFO` database to handle certain terminal capabilities. The use of appropriate `CURSES` routines is recommended in all other situations.

The `setupterm()` routine defines terminal-dependent variables for the `terminfo` layer of `CURSES`. The `setupterm()` routine initializes the `terminfo` variables `lines` and `columns` such that if `use_env(FALSE)` has been called, the `TERMINFO` values are used regardless of the environmental variables `LINES` and `COLUMNS` or the program's window dimensions. When `use_env(TRUE)` has been

#### 4-170 CURSES

## setupterm

called, which is the default, the environment variables **LINES** and **COLUMNS** are used, if they exist. If the environment variables do not exist and the program is running in a window, the current window size is used.

The *term* parameter of **setupterm()** specifies the terminal; if null, terminal type is taken from the **TERM** environment variable. All output is sent to *fildev* which is initialized for output. If *errret* is not null, **OK** or **ERR** is returned and a status value is stored in the integer pointed to by *errret*. The status values that may be returned are shown in Table 4-7.

**Table 4-7. Status Values**

| Value | Description                                 |
|-------|---------------------------------------------|
| 1     | Normal                                      |
| 0     | Terminal could not be found                 |
| -1    | <b>TERMINFO</b> database could not be found |

If *errret* is null, an error message is printed, and **setupterm()** exits. The **setterm()** routine is an older version of **setupterm()**. It is included for compatibility with previous versions of **CURSES**. New programs should use **setupterm()**.

## Implementation Considerations

HP-UX and UNIX System V implementations.

## See Also

**use\_env()**

## Portability

HP-UX, UNIX System V

---

## **start\_color**

The `start_color` routine is used to initialize the use of color.

---

**Note**                The `start_color` routine is not implemented at this time.

---

### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int start_color();
```

### **Return Values**

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

### **Description**

The `start_color()` routine initializes the use of color. It must be used if color is to be used in the program. It must be called before any other color routines, ideally right after `initscr()`. Eight basic colors are initialized (black, red, green, yellow, blue, magenta, cyan, and white) and two global variables (`COLORS` and `COLOR_PAIRS`). The `COLORS` variable specifies the number of colors that the terminal supports, and the `COLOR_PAIRS` variable specifies the number of color pairs. Colors are always in pairs consisting of a foreground color (for characters) and a background color (for the the rest of the character cell). The `start_color()` routine also restores the values of the colors to those that the terminal had on startup.

**start\_color**

## **Implementation Considerations**

UNIX System V implementation

## **See Also**

`can_change_color()`, `color_content()`, `has_color()`, `init_color()`,  
`init_pair()`, `pair_content()`

## **Portability**

UNIX System V

---

## subwin

The `subwin` routine is used to create a subwindow relative to the physical screen.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

WINDOW *subwin(WINDOW *orig, int nlines, int ncols, int begin_y,
 int begin_x);
```

### Parameters

|                |                                                                          |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>orig</i>    | The parent window of the subwindow.                                      |
| <i>nlines</i>  | The number of lines in the subwindow.                                    |
| <i>ncols</i>   | The number of columns in the subwindow                                   |
| <i>begin_y</i> | The <i>y</i> (row) coordinate of the upper-left corner of the window.    |
| <i>begin_x</i> | The <i>x</i> (column) coordinate of the upper-left corner of the window. |

### Return Values

On success, a pointer to the new window structure is returned; otherwise, a null pointer is returned.

### Description

The `subwin()` routine creates a subwindow within window *orig*, with the specified number of lines and columns, and upper left corner positioned at *begin\_x*, *begin\_y* (relative to the physical screen, not to window *orig*). A pointer to the new window structure is returned.

The original window and subwindow share character storage of the overlapping area. (Each window maintains its own pointers, cursor location, and other items.) This means that characters and attributes are identical in overlapping areas regardless of which window characters are written to.

## 4-174 CURSES

## subwin

When using subwindows, it is often necessary to call `touchwin()` before `wrefresh()` to maintain proper screen contents.

---

|             |                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note</b> | The <code>derwin()</code> routine creates a subwindow in exactly the same way, but allows you to specify coordinates relative to window <i>orig</i> . |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

---

## Implementation Considerations

Identical to XPG/3

## See Also

`newwin()`, `touchwin()`, `derwin()`

## Portability

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3



---

## **termattrs**

The `termattrs` routine is used to return the video attributes supported by the terminal.

### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

chtype termattrs();
```

### **Return Values**

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

### **Description**

The `termattrs()` routine returns a logical OR of all video attributes available on a terminal.

### **Implementation Considerations**

UNIX System V implementation

### **Portability**

UNIX System V

## **termname**

The **termname** routine is used to obtain the return value of the environmental variable **TERM**.

### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

char *termname();
```

### **Return Values**

On success, a pointer to the value of the environmental variable is returned; otherwise, a null pointer is returned.

### **Description**

The **termname()** routine returns a pointer to the value of the environmental variable **TERM** (truncated to 14 characters).

### **Implementation Considerations**

UNIX System V implementation

### **Portability**

UNIX System V

---

## tgetent

The `tgetent` routine is used to look up the `termcap` name (interface to `termcap` library).

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int tgetent (char *bp, char *name);
```

### Parameters

*bp*                    A pointer to a buffer 1024 bytes long.  
*name*                  The `termcap` entry to look up.

### Return Values

-1                    Cannot open `termcap` file.  
0                    No entry in `termcap`.  
1                    Successful completion.

### Description

The `tgetent()` routine looks up the `termcap` entry for the terminal name.

The `tgetent()` routine is included for compatibility with programs that use the `termcap` library. New programs should use `terminfo` functions.

---

|             |                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note</b> | The parameter <i>bp</i> should designate an area 1024 bytes long that is retained for all calls to <code>tgetnum()</code> , <code>tgetflag()</code> , <code>tgetstr()</code> , and <code>tgoto()</code> . |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

---

**tgetent**

## **Implementation Considerations**

UNIX System V implementation

## **See Also**

`setupterm()`

## **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V

---

## tgetflag

The `tgetflag` routine is used to get the Boolean entry for `termcap` capability (interface to `termcap` library).

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int tgetflag (char id[2]);
```

### Parameters

*cap*                      The capability for which to get the Boolean entry.

### Return Values

TRUE                      Successful completion.  
FALSE                     An error occurred.

### Description

The `tgetflag()` routine returns the Boolean value of the `termcap` *cap*.

The `tgetflag()` routine is included for compatibility purposes with programs that use the `termcap` library. New programs should use the `terminfo` routines.

### Implementation Considerations

UNIX System V implementation

### See Also

`tigetflag()`, `tputs()`

### Portability

HP-UX, UNIX System V

## 4-180 CURSES

---

## **tgetnum**

The **tgetnum** routine is used to get the numeric entry for **termcap** capability (interface to **termcap** library).

### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int tgetnum (char id[2]);
```

### **Parameters**

*cap*                    The **termcap** capability for which to get the numeric entry.

### **Return Values**

Returns the value of the numeric **termcap** entry, or returns -1 if the entry is not given for the terminal.

### **Description**

The **tgetnum()** routine looks up the numeric entry for *cap*.

The **tgetnum()** routine is included for compatibility purposes with programs that use the **termcap** library. New programs should use the **terminfo** routines.

### **Implementation Considerations**

UNIX System V implementation

### **See Also**

**tigetnum()**, **tputs()**

### **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V

---

## **tgetstr**

The **tgetstr** routine is used to get the string entry for **termcap** capability (interface to **termcap** library).

### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

char *tgetstr (char cap[2], char **area);
```

### **Parameters**

*cap*                The **termcap** capability for which to get the string entry.  
*area*              A pointer to the area where the decoded string is stored.

### **Return Values**

On success, a pointer to the string is returned; otherwise, a null pointer is returned.

### **Description**

The **tgetstr()** routine looks up the string entry for the **termcap** *cap*, placing the decoded string at *area* and advancing the area pointers. The **tputs()** routine should be used to output the string.

The **tgetstr()** routine is included for compatibility purposes with programs that use the **termcap** library. New programs should use the **terminfo** routines.

### **Implementation Considerations**

UNIX System V implementations

**tgetstr**

### **See Also**

`tigetstr()`, `tputs()`, `tparm()`

### **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V

**CURSES 4-183**



---

## tgoto

The `tgoto` routine is used to decode the cursor motion values (interface to `termcap` library).

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

char *tgoto (char *cap, int col, int row);
```

### Parameters

|            |                                                                       |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>cap</i> | The pointer to the <code>termcap</code> capability for cursor motion. |
| <i>col</i> | The column placement of the new cursor.                               |
| <i>row</i> | The row placement of the new cursor.                                  |

### Return Values

On success, a pointer to the decoded cursor addressing string is returned; otherwise, a null pointer is returned.

### Description

The `tgoto()` routine decodes cursor values returned from `tgetstr()`. A pointer to a cursor addressing string is returned that, when sent to the terminal with `tputs()`, moves the cursor to the new location.

The `tgoto()` routine is included for compatibility purposes with programs that use the `termcap` library. New programs should use `terminfo` routines.

### Implementation Considerations

UNIX System V implementation

**tgoto**

## **See Also**

`mvcur()`

## **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V

**CURSES 4-185**

## **tigetflag**

---

### **tigetflag tigetnum tigetstr**

The `tigetflag`, `tigetnum`, and `tigetstr` routines are used to return the value of `terminfo` capability (interface to `terminfo`).

### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int tigetflag (char *capname);
int tigetnum (char *capname);
char *tigetstr (char *capname);
```

### **Parameters**

*capname*            The name of the `terminfo` capability for which the value is required.

### **Return Values**

The `tigetflag()` routine returns -1 if *capname* is not a Boolean capability.  
The `tigetnum()` routine returns -1 if *capname* is not a numeric capability. The `tigetstr()` routine returns (char \*)-1 if *capname* is not a string capability.

### **Description**

The `tigetflag()`, `tigetnum()`, and `tigetstr()` routines return values for `terminfo` capabilities passed to them.

The following null-terminated arrays contain the *capnames*, the *termcap* codes and full C names for each of the `terminfo` variables.

```
char *boolnames, *boolcodes, *boolfnames
char *numnames, *numcodes, *numfnames
char *strnames, *strcodes, *strfnames
```

## **4-186 CURSES**

**tigetflag**

## **Implementation Considerations**

UNIX System V implementation

## **See Also**

`terminfo`

## **Portability**

UNIX System V

## timeout

---

### timeout wtimeout

The `timeout` and `wtimeout` routines are used to set a timed blocking or nonblocking read for a window.

#### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int timeout(int delay);
int wtimeout(WINDOW win, int delay);
```

#### Parameters

|              |                                                             |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>delay</i> | The number of milliseconds to block or wait for input.      |
| <i>win</i>   | A pointer to the window in which to set the timed blocking. |

#### Return Values

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

#### Description

The `timeout()` and `wtimeout()` routines set the length of time `getch()` waits for input for windows `stdscr` and *win*, respectively. These routines are similar to `nodelay` except the time to block or wait for input can be specified.

A negative delay causes the program to wait indefinitely for input; a delay of 0 returns **ERR** if no input is ready; and a positive delay blocks until input arrives or the time specified expires (in which case, **ERR** is returned).

---

|             |                                                |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note</b> | The <code>timeout()</code> routine is a macro. |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------|

---

**timeout**

## **Implementation Considerations**

UNIX System V implementation

## **See Also**

`wgetch()`, `nodelay()`

## **Portability**

UNIX System V

**CURSES 4-189**

## touchwin

---

**touchwin**  
**touchline**  
**untouchwin**  
**wtouchln**  
**is\_linetouched**  
**is\_wintouched**

The touchwin set of routines is used to control the refresh of the window.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int touchwin(WINDOW *win);
int touchline(WINDOW *win, int start, int count);
int untouchwin(WINDOW *win);
int wtouchln(WINDOW *win, int y, int n, int changed);

int is_linetouched(WINDOW *win, int line);
int is_wintouched(WINDOW *win);
```

### Parameters

|                |                                                                                                       |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>count</i>   | The number of lines in the window to mark as changed.                                                 |
| <i>changed</i> | A flag indicating whether to make lines look changed ( <b>TRUE</b> ) or not changed ( <b>FALSE</b> ). |
| <i>line</i>    | The line to be checked for change since refresh.                                                      |
| <i>n</i>       | The number of lines in the window to mark as changed.                                                 |
| <i>win</i>     | A pointer to the window in which the refresh is to be controlled or monitored.                        |
| <i>start</i>   | The starting line number of the portion of the window to make appear changed.                         |
| <i>y</i>       | The starting line number of the portion of the window to make appear changed or not changed.          |

## 4-190 CURSES

## Return Values

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

## Description

The `touchwin()` routine marks the entire window as dirty. This makes it appear to `CURSES` as if the whole window has been changed, thus causing the entire window to be rewritten with the next call to `wrefresh()`. This is sometimes necessary when using overlapping windows; the change to one window is not reflected in the other and, hence is not recorded.

The `touchline()` routine marks as dirty a portion of the window starting at line *start* and continuing for *count* lines, instead of the entire window. Consequently, that portion of the window is updated with the next call to `wrefresh()`.

The `untouchwin()` routine marks all lines in the window as unchanged since the last refresh, ensuring that it is not updated.

The `wtouchln()` routines marks *n* lines starting at line *y* as either changed (`TRUE`) or unchanged (`FALSE`) since the last refresh.

To find out which lines or windows have been changed since the last refresh, use the `is_linetouched()` and `is_wintouched()` commands, respectively. These return `TRUE` if the specified lines or window have been changed since the last call to `wrefresh()` or `FALSE` if no changes have been made.

---

|             |                                                                                          |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note</b> | All routines except <code>wtouchln()</code> and <code>is_wintouched()</code> are macros. |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

---

## Implementation Considerations

The `touchwin()` routine is identical to XPG/3. The `touchline()`, `untouchwin()`, `wtouchln()`, `is_linetouched()`, and `is_wintouched()` routines are UNIX System V implementations.



**touchwin**

## **See Also**

`wrefresh()`

## **Portability**

The `touchwin()` routine conforms to HP-UX, UNIX System V, and XPG/3. The `touchline()`, `untouchwin()`, `wtouchln()`, `is_linetouched()`, and `is_wintouched()` routines conform to UNIX System V.

## tparm

The **tparm** routine is used to instantiate a parameterized string (interface to **terminfo**).

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

char *tparm (char *str, long int p1, long int p2, long int p3,
 long int p4, long int p5, long int p6, int p7,
 long int p8, long int p9);
```

### Parameters

*p1...p9*            The parameters to be instantiated.  
*str*                A pointer to the string to be instantiated.

### Return Values

On success, a pointer to parameterized string is returned; otherwise, a null pointer is returned.

### Description

The **tparm()** routine is a low-level routine used outside of **CURSES** to deal directly with the **terminfo** database. The use of appropriate **CURSES** routines is recommended for most situations.

The **tparm()** routine instantiates a parameterized string using up to nine arguments. The string is suitable for output processing by **tputs()**.

**tparm**

## **Implementation Considerations**

UNIX System V implementation

## **See Also**

`tputs()`

## **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V

## tputs putp

The **tputs** and **putp** routines are used to apply padding information and output string (interface to **terminfo**).

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int tputs (char *str, int affcnt, int (*putc) (int));
int putp (char *str);
```

### Parameters

|               |                                                                                                    |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>str</i>    | A pointer to a <b>terminfo</b> variable or return value from <b>tparm()</b> or <b>tigetstr()</b> . |
| <i>affcnt</i> | The number of lines affected, or 1 if not relevant.                                                |
| <i>putc</i>   | The output function.                                                                               |

### Return Values

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

### Description

The **tputs()** and **putp()** routines are low-level routines used outside of **CURSES** to deal directly with the **terminfo** database. The use of appropriate **CURSES** routines is recommended for most situations.

The **tputs()** routine adds padding information and then outputs *str*. The value for *str* must be the result value from **tparm()**, or **tigetstr()**, or a **terminfo** string variable.

The **tputs()** routine replaces the padding specification (if one exists) with enough characters to produce the specified delay. Characters are output one at a time to **putc**, a routine similar to **putchar()**.

## **tputs**

The `putp()` routine calls `tputs()` as follows:

```
tputs(str, 1, _putchar)
```

---

|             |                                                                                                                                                             |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note</b> | The output of <code>putp()</code> goes to <code>stdout</code> , not to the file descriptor, <i>fil</i> <i>des</i> , specified in <code>setupterm()</code> . |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

---

## **Implementation Considerations**

UNIX System V implementation

## **See Also**

`tigetstr()`, `tparm()`

## **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V

## **traceton tracetofo**

The **traceton** and **tracetofo** routines are used to enable or disable tracing.

### **Syntax**

```
#include <cursets.h>

tracetofo();
traceton();
```

### **Return Values**

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

### **Description**

The **traceton()** and **tracetofo()** routines turn on or turn off tracing, respectively. Since the volume of output produced by these routines can be very large, limit the area traced at a given time.

The output generated by these routines is stored in a file called **trace.out**. The information provided by the **trace.out** file is the name of the function and its parameters when entered and the function name and its return value upon exit.

### **Implementation Considerations**

Nonstandard

### **Portability**

HP-UX

---

## typeahead

The `typeahead` routine is used to check for type-ahead characters.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int typeahead (int fd);
```

### Parameters

*fd*                      The file descriptor that is used to check for type-ahead characters.

### Return Values

OK                      Successful completion.  
ERR                     An error occurred.

### Description

The `typeahead()` routine specifies the file descriptor (*fd*) to use to check for type-ahead characters (characters typed by the user but not yet processed by CURSES).

CURSES checks for type-ahead characters periodically while updating the screen. If characters are found, the current update is postponed until the next `wrefresh()` or `doupdate()`. This speeds up response to commands that have been typed ahead. Normally, the input **FILE** passed to `newterm()`, or `stdin` in the case of `initscr()`, is used for type-ahead checking.

If *fd* is -1, no type-ahead checking is done.

**typeahead**

## **Implementation Considerations**

Identical to XPG/3

## **See Also**

`wgetch()`, `wrefresh()`

## **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

**CURSES 4-199**



---

## unctrl

The `unctrl` routine is used to convert a character to printable form.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>
#include <unctrl.h>

char *unctrl(chtype c);
```

### Return Values

Returns a string.

### Description

The `unctrl()` routine converts the character code *c* into a printable form (if unprintable). Control characters are displayed in the `^x` notation where `^` identifies the control key, and *x* represents an alphanumeric character that is pressed while the control key is held down.

### Implementation Considerations

Identical to XPG/3

### See Also

`waddch()`, `waddstr()`

### Portability

HP-UX, UNIX System V, XPG/3

## use\_env

The `use_env` routine is used to set values of lines and columns.

### Syntax

```
#include <curses.h>

int use_env(char bool);
```

### Parameters

*bool*                    A Boolean expression.

### Return Values

OK                      Successful completion.  
ERR                     An error occurred.

### Description

The `use_env()` routine takes the values for lines and columns from the `terminfo` database (if *bool* is `FALSE`), or from environmental variables (if *bool* is `TRUE`). If no environmental variables have been set, the window size is used. This routine must be set before `initscr()`, `newterm()`, or `setupterm()` is called. The default action is `TRUE`.

### Implementation Considerations

UNIX System V implementation

### See Also

`initscr()`, `newterm()`, `setupterm()`

### Portability

UNIX System V

## **vidputs**

---

### **vidputs vidattr**

The **vidputs** and **vidattr** routines are used to display a string with video attributes (interface to **terminfo**).

#### **Syntax**

```
#include <curses.h>

int vidputs (chtype attrs, int (*putc) (int));
int vidattr (chtype attrs);
```

#### **Parameters**

|              |                                          |
|--------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>attrs</i> | The attributes of the foreground window. |
| <i>putc</i>  | The output function.                     |

#### **Return Values**

|     |                        |
|-----|------------------------|
| OK  | Successful completion. |
| ERR | An error occurred.     |

#### **Description**

The **vidputs()** and **vidattr()** routines are low-level routines used outside of **CURSES** to deal directly with the **terminfo** database. The use of appropriate **CURSES** routines is recommended for most situations.

The **vidputs()** routine enables and disables attributes for the current terminal. The attributes shown in Table 4-8 are defined in **curses.h** and can be combined with the bitwise OR operator.

Table 4-8. Constant Values for Highlighting Attributes

| Constant                | Description                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| A_ALTCHARSET            | Alternate character set                |
| A_ATTRIBUTES            | Attribute mask                         |
| A_BLINK                 | Blinking                               |
| A_BOLD                  | Bold                                   |
| A_CHARTEXT              | Character mask                         |
| A_COLOR                 | Color mask                             |
| A_DIM                   | Dim                                    |
| A_INVIS                 | Invisible                              |
| A_NORMAL                | Disable attributes                     |
| A_PROTECT               | No display                             |
| A_REVERSE               | Reverse video                          |
| A_STANDOUT              | Highlights specific to terminal        |
| A_UNDERLINE             | Underline                              |
| COLOR_PAIR( <i>n</i> )  | Color-pair number <i>n</i>             |
| PAIR_NUMBER( <i>a</i> ) | Pair number for COLOR_PAIR( <i>n</i> ) |

The characters are passed one at a time to the `putc` routine, a routine similar to `putchar()`.

The `vidattr()` routine is similar to `vidputs()` except characters are sent to `stdout` instead of a user-supplied output function.

**vidputs**

## **Implementation Considerations**

UNIX System V implementation

## **Portability**

HP-UX, UNIX System V

**4-204 CURSES**

# Index

---

## A

- access control
  - SVID IPC, 2-4
- addch , 4-7
- addchnstr, 4-12
- addchstr, 4-12
- addnstr, 4-15
- addstr, 4-15
- attaching shared memory, 2-38
- attribute capabilities, 3-43
- attroff, 4-18
- attron, 4-18
- attrset, 4-18

## B

- baudrate, 4-22
- beep, 4-23
- bkgd, 4-24
- bkgdset, 4-24
- boolean capabilities, 3-12, 3-55
- border, 4-27
- box, 4-27

## C

- can\_change\_color, 4-81
- capabilities
  - attribute, 3-43
  - boolean, 3-3, 3-11, 3-55
  - configuration, 3-30
  - cursor movement, 3-36
  - edit, 3-40
  - margins, 3-48

- miscellaneous, 3-52
- names, 3-11
- numeric, 3-3, 3-11, 3-13, 3-57
- scrolling, 3-36
- string, 3-3, 3-11, 3-15, 3-59
- tabs, 3-48
- terminal key, 3-50
- cbreak, 4-31
- clear, 4-33
- clearok, 4-35
- clrtobot, 4-36
- clrtoeol, 4-38
- color\_content, 4-81
- color\_pair, 4-40
- configuration capabilities, 3-30
- configure SVID IPC resources, 2-5
- conformance
  - SVID IPC , 2-6
- controlling message queues, 2-9
- controlling semaphores, 2-23, 2-32
- controlling shared memory, 2-41
- copywin, 4-41
- creating a SVID IPC key, 2-7
- curses, 4-1-204
  - addch , 4-7
  - addchnstr, 4-12
  - addchstr, 4-12
  - addnstr, 4-15
  - addstr, 4-15
  - attroff, 4-18
  - attron, 4-18
  - attrset, 4-18

**Index-1**

|                        |                   |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| baudrate, 4-22         | has_color, 4-81   |
| beep, 4-23             | has_ic, 4-83      |
| bkgd, 4-24             | has_il, 4-83      |
| bkgdset, 4-24          | idlok, 4-84       |
| border, 4-27           | immedok, 4-86     |
| box, 4-27              | inch, 4-87        |
| can_change_color, 4-81 | inchnstr, 4-89    |
| cbreak, 4-31           | inchstr, 4-89     |
| clear, 4-33            | init_color, 4-92  |
| clearok, 4-35          | init_pair, 4-92   |
| clrtoebot, 4-36        | initscr, 4-95     |
| clrtoeol, 4-38         | innstr, 4-105     |
| color_content, 4-81    | insch, 4-96       |
| color_pair, 4-40       | insdelln, 4-98    |
| copywin, 4-41          | insertln, 4-100   |
| cur_set, 4-43          | insnstr, 4-102    |
| def_prog_mode, 4-44    | insstr, 4-102     |
| def_shell_mode, 4-44   | instr, 4-105      |
| delay_output, 4-48     | intrflush, 4-108  |
| delch, 4-49            | isendwin, 4-63    |
| del_curterm, 4-46      | keyname, 4-110    |
| deleteln, 4-51         | keypad, 4-111     |
| delscreen, 4-53        | killchar, 4-113   |
| delwin, 4-54           | leaveok, 4-114    |
| derwin, 4-56           | longname, 4-116   |
| doupdate, 4-153        | meta, 4-117       |
| dupwin, 4-58           | move, 4-119       |
| echo, 4-59             | mvaddch, 4-7      |
| echochar, 4-61         | mvaddchnstr, 4-12 |
| endwin, 4-63           | mvaddchstr, 4-12  |
| erase, 4-65            | mvaddnstr, 4-15   |
| erasechar, 4-67        | mvaddstr, 4-15    |
| flash, 4-23            | mvcur, 4-121      |
| flushinp, 4-68         | mvdelch, 4-49     |
| getbegyx, 4-78         | mvgetch, 4-69     |
| getch, 4-69            | mvgetstr, 4-76    |
| getmaxyx, 4-78         | mvinch, 4-87      |
| getparyx, 4-78         | mvinchnstr, 4-89  |
| getstr, 4-76           | mvinchstr, 4-89   |
| getyx, 4-78            | mvinnstr, 4-105   |
| halfdelay, 4-80        | mvinsch, 4-96     |

## Index-2

mvinsnstr, 4-102  
 mvinsstr, 4-102  
 mvinstr, 4-105  
 mvprintw, 4-146  
 mvscanw, 4-157  
 mvwaddch, 4-7  
 mvwaddchnstr, 4-12  
 mvwaddchstr, 4-12  
 mvwaddnstr, 4-15  
 mvwaddstr, 4-15  
 mvwdelch, 4-49  
 mvwgetch, 4-69  
 mvwgetstr, 4-76  
 mvwin, 4-123  
 mvwinch, 4-87  
 mvwinchnstr, 4-89  
 mvwinchstr, 4-89  
 mvwinnstr, 4-105  
 mvwinsch, 4-96  
 mvwinsnstr, 4-102  
 mvwinsstr, 4-102  
 mvwinstr, 4-105  
 mvwprintw, 4-146  
 mvwscanw, 4-157  
 napms, 4-125  
 newpad, 4-126  
 newterm, 4-128  
 newwin, 4-130  
 nl, 4-132  
 nocbreak, 4-31  
 nodelay, 4-133  
 noecho, 4-59  
 nonl, 4-132  
 noqiflush, 4-148  
 noraw, 4-149  
 notimeout, 4-135  
 overlay, 4-137  
 overwrite, 4-137  
 pair\_content, 4-81, 4-143  
 pnoutrefresh, 4-144  
 prefresh, 4-144  
 printw, 4-146  
 putp, 4-195  
 qiflush, 4-148  
 raw, 4-149  
 redrawwin, 4-151  
 refresh, 4-153  
 reset\_prog\_mode, 4-155  
 reset\_shell\_mode, 4-155  
 resetty, 4-156  
 savetty, 4-156  
 scanw, 4-157  
 scr\_dump, 4-159  
 scrollok, 4-163  
 scr\_restore, 4-159  
 set\_curterm, 4-165  
 setscreg, 4-168  
 set\_term, 4-167  
 setterm, 4-170  
 setupterm, 3-74, 4-170  
 srcl, 4-161  
 standend, 4-18  
 standout, 4-18  
 start\_color, 4-172  
 subwin, 4-174  
 termattrs, 4-176  
 terminfo, 3-74  
 termname, 4-177  
 tgetent, 4-178  
 tgetflag, 4-180  
 tgetnum, 4-181  
 tgetstr, 4-182  
 tgoto, 4-184  
 tigetflag, 4-186  
 tigetnum, 4-186  
 tigetstr, 4-186  
 timeout, 4-188  
 touchline, 4-190  
 touchwin, 4-190  
 tparm, 4-193  
 tputs, 4-195  
 traceoff, 4-197

## Index-3



- traceon, 4-197
- typeahead, 4-198
- unctrl, 4-200
- ungetch, 4-69
- untouchwin, 4-190
- use\_env, 4-201
- vidattr, 4-202
- vidputs, 4-202
- vwprintw, 4-146
- vwscanw, 4-157
- waddch , 4-7
- waddchnstr, 4-12
- waddchstr, 4-12
- waddnstr, 4-15
- waddstr, 4-15
- wattroff, 4-18
- wattron, 4-18
- wattrset, 4-18
- wbkgd, 4-24
- wbkgdset, 4-24
- wborder, 4-27
- wclear, 4-33
- wclrtoobot, 4-36
- wclrtoeol, 4-38
- wdelch, 4-49
- wdeleteln, 4-51
- wechochar, 4-61
- werase, 4-65
- wgetch, 4-69
- wgetnstr, 4-76
- wgetstr, 4-76
- winch, 4-87
- winchnstr, 4-89
- winchstr, 4-89
- winnstr, 4-105
- winsch, 4-96
- winsdelln, 4-98
- winsertln, 4-100
- winsnstr, 4-102
- winsstr, 4-102
- winstr, 4-105

- wmove, 4-119
- wnoutrefresh, 4-153
- wprintw, 4-146
- wredrawln, 4-151
- wrefresh, 4-153
- wscanw, 4-157
- wstandend, 4-18
- wstandout, 4-18
- wtimeout, 4-188
- wtouchln, 4-190
- cur\_set, 4-43
- cursor movement capabilities, 3-36

## D

- database
  - terminfo, 3-1
- def\_prog\_mode, 4-44
- def\_shell\_mode, 4-44
- delay\_output, 4-48
- delch, 4-49
- del\_curterm, 4-46
- deleteln, 4-51
- delscreen, 4-53
- delwin, 4-54
- derwin, 4-56
- detaching shared memory, 2-44
- display SVID IPC status , 2-5
- doupdate, 4-153
- dupwin, 4-58

## E

- echo, 4-59
- echochar, 4-61
- edit capabilities, 3-40
- endwin, 4-63
- erase, 4-65
- erasechar, 4-67

## F

- flash, 4-23
- flushinp, 4-68

## Index-4

ftok(), 2-7

## G

getbegyx, 4-78  
getch, 4-69  
getmaxyx, 4-78  
getparyx, 4-78  
getstr, 4-76  
getyx, 4-78

## H

halfdelay, 4-80  
has\_color, 4-81  
has\_ic, 4-83  
has\_il, 4-83  
headers  
    SVID IPC, 2-50  
    <sys/ipc.h>, 2-51  
    <sys/msg.h>, 2-53  
    <sys/sem.h>, 2-55  
    <sys/shm.h>, 2-57

## I

idlok, 4-84  
immedok, 4-86  
implementation  
    SVID IPC, 2-6  
inch, 4-87  
inchnstr, 4-89  
inchstr, 4-89  
include files  
    SVID IPC, 2-50  
    <sys/ipc.h>, 2-51  
    <sys/msg.h>, 2-53  
    <sys/sem.h>, 2-55  
    <sys/shm.h>, 2-57  
init\_color, 4-92  
init\_pair, 4-92  
initscr, 4-95  
innstr, 4-105  
insch, 4-96

insdelln, 4-98  
insertln, 4-100  
insnstr, 4-102  
insstr, 4-102  
instr, 4-105  
intrflush, 4-108  
IPCRM utility, 2-5  
IPCS utility, 2-5  
isendwin, 4-63

## K

key  
    SVID IPC, 2-4, 2-7  
key capabilities, 3-50  
keyname, 4-110  
keypad, 4-111  
killchar, 4-113

## L

leaveok, 4-114  
/lib/libsvipc.a, 2-4  
libraries  
    SVID IPC, 2-4  
longname, 4-116

## M

message queues, 2-2, 2-12  
    controlling, 2-9  
    header description, 2-53  
msgctl(), 2-9  
msgget(), 2-12  
msgrcv(), 2-15  
msgsnd(), 2-19  
    receiving messages, 2-15  
    returning identifier, 2-12  
    sending messages, 2-19  
meta, 4-117  
miscellaneous capabilities, 3-52  
move, 4-119  
MPE/iX shell, 2-4  
msgctl(), 2-9

- msgget(), 2-12
- msgrcv(), 2-15
- msgsnd(), 2-19
- mvaddch , 4-7
- mvaddchnstr, 4-12
- mvaddchstr, 4-12
- mvaddnstr, 4-15
- mvaddstr, 4-15
- mvcur, 4-121
- mvdelch, 4-49
- mvgetch, 4-69
- mvgetstr , 4-76
- mvinch, 4-87
- mvinchnstr, 4-89
- mvinchstr, 4-89
- mvinnstr, 4-105
- mvinsch, 4-96
- mvinsnstr, 4-102
- mvinsstr, 4-102
- mvinstr, 4-105
- mvprintw, 4-146
- mvscanw, 4-157
- mwaddch , 4-7
- mwaddchnstr, 4-12
- mwaddchstr, 4-12
- mwaddnstr, 4-15
- mwaddstr, 4-15
- mwdelch, 4-49
- mwgetch, 4-69
- mwgetstr, 4-76
- mwwin, 4-123
- mwwinch, 4-87
- mwwinchnstr, 4-89
- mwwinchstr, 4-89
- mwinnstr, 4-105
- mwinsch, 4-96
- mwinsnstr, 4-102
- mwinsstr, 4-102
- mwinstr, 4-105
- mwprintw, 4-146
- mwscanw, 4-157

## Index-6

## N

- napms, 4-125
- newpad, 4-126
- newterm, 4-128
- newwin, 4-130
- nl, 4-132
- nocbreak, 4-31
- nodelay, 4-133
- noecho, 4-59
- nonl, 4-132
- noqiflush, 4-148
- noraw, 4-149
- notimeout, 4-135
- numeric capabilities, 3-11, 3-13, 3-57

## O

- overlay, 4-137
- overwrite , 4-137

## P

- padding specification, 3-4
- pair\_content, 4-81, 4-143
- parameterized strings, 3-5
- pnoutrefresh, 4-144
- prefresh, 4-144
- printw, 4-146
- putp, 4-195

## Q

- qiflush, 4-148

## R

- raw, 4-149
- receiving messages, 2-15
- redrawwin, 4-151
- refresh, 4-153
- remove SVID IPC resources, 2-5
- reset\_prog\_mode, 4-155
- reset\_shell\_mode, 4-155
- resetty, 4-156

returning shared memory identifier,  
2-46

routines

curses, 3-74, 4-1-204

terminfo, 3-1-77

## **S**

savetty, 4-156

scanw, 4-157

scr\_dump, 4-159

scrolling capabilities, 3-36

scrollok, 4-163

scr\_restore, 4-159

semaphores, 2-3

controlling, 2-23

header description, 2-55

operations, 2-32

returning identifier, 2-28

semctl(), 2-23

semget(), 2-28

semop(), 2-32

shmat(), 2-38

shmctl(), 2-41

shmdt(), 2-44

shmget(), 2-46

semctl(), 2-23

semget(), 2-28

semop(), 2-32

sending messages, 2-19

set\_curterm, 4-165

setscrreg, 4-168

set\_term, 4-167

setterm, 4-170

setupterm, 3-74, 4-170

shared memory, 2-3

attaching, 2-38

controlling, 2-41

detaching, 2-44

header description, 2-57

returning identifier, 2-46

shmat(), 2-38

shmctl(), 2-41

shmdt(), 2-44

shmget(), 2-46

special characters, 3-9

srcl, 4-161

stack operators, 3-6

standend, 4-18

standout, 4-18

start\_color, 4-172

string capabilities, 3-11, 3-15, 3-59

subwin, 4-174

SVID IPC

access control, 2-4

conformance , 2-6

header descriptions, 2-50

implementation considerations , 2-6

IPCS utility , 2-5

IPRM utility , 2-5

key, 2-4

library use, 2-4

managing , 2-5

message queues, 2-2

overview, 2-1

semaphores, 2-3

shared memory, 2-3, 2-38, 2-41, 2-44,  
2-46

SVIPC utility , 2-5

utilities , 2-5

SVID IPC functions

ftok(), 2-7

msgctl(), 2-9

msgget(), 2-12

msgrcv(), 2-15

msgsnd(), 2-19

semctl(), 2-23

semget(), 2-28

semop(), 2-32

shmat(), 2-38

shmctl(), 2-41

shmdt(), 2-44

shmget(), 2-46

- SVID IPC headers
  - <sys/ipc.h>, 2-51
  - <sys/msg.h>, 2-53
  - <sys/sem.h>, 2-55
  - <sys/shm.h>, 2-57
- SVID IPC key
  - ftok(), 2-7
- SVID IPC message queues, 2-9
  - header description, 2-53
  - receiving messages, 2-15
  - returning identifier, 2-12
  - sending messages, 2-19
- SVID IPC semaphore operations, 2-32
- SVID IPC semaphores, 2-23
  - header description, 2-55
  - returning identifier, 2-28
- SVID IPC shared memory
  - header description, 2-57
- SVIPC utility , 2-5
  - <sys/ipc.h>, 2-51
  - <sys/msg.h>, 2-53
  - <sys/sem.h>, 2-55
  - <sys/shm.h>, 2-57
- T**
  - termattrs, 4-176
  - termcap
    - interface, 4-178, 4-180, 4-181, 4-182, 4-184
  - termcap library, 4-178
  - term file, 3-74
  - terminfo, 3-1-77
    - compiled file, 3-74
    - database, 3-1
    - device descriptions, 3-2
    - interface, 4-1, 4-46, 4-121, 4-165, 4-170, 4-186, 4-193, 4-195, 4-202
    - source file, 3-2, 3-74
    - term file, 3-74
  - termname, 4-177
  - tgetent, 4-178
  - tgetflag, 4-180
  - tgetnum, 4-181
  - tgetstr, 4-182
  - tgoto, 4-184
  - tic utility, 3-74
  - tigetflag, 4-186
  - tigetnum, 4-186
  - tigetstr, 4-186
  - timeout, 4-188
  - touchline, 4-190
  - touchwin, 4-190
  - tparm, 4-193
  - tputs, 4-195
  - traceoff, 4-197
  - tracoon, 4-197
  - tracing
    - disabling, 4-197
    - enabling, 4-197
  - typeahead, 4-198
- U**
  - unctrl, 4-200
  - ungetch, 4-69
  - untouchwin, 4-190
  - use\_env, 4-201
  - utilities
    - IPCRM , 2-5
    - IPCS , 2-5
    - SVID IPC , 2-5
    - SVIPC , 2-5
    - tic, 3-74
- V**
  - variables
    - boolean, 3-55
    - environment, 3-1, 4-2-3
    - global, 4-5
    - keys, 3-50
    - margins, 3-48
    - miscellaneous, 3-52
    - ncv, 3-45

## Index-8

- numeric, 3-57
- string, 3-59
- tabs, 3-48
- terminfo, 3-11
- vidattr, 4-202
- vidputs, 4-202
- vwprintw, 4-146
- vwscanw, 4-157

## **W**

- waddch, 4-7
- waddchnstr, 4-12
- waddchstr, 4-12
- waddnstr, 4-15
- waddstr, 4-15
- wattroff, 4-18
- wattron, 4-18
- wattrset, 4-18
- wbkgd, 4-24
- wbkgdset, 4-24
- wborder, 4-27
- wclear, 4-33
- wclrtoobot, 4-36
- wclrtoeol, 4-38
- wdelch, 4-49
- wdeleteln, 4-51

- wechochar, 4-61
- werase, 4-65
- wgetch, 4-69
- wgetnstr, 4-76
- wgetstr, 4-76
- winch, 4-87
- winchnstr, 4-89
- winchstr, 4-89
- winnstr, 4-105
- winsch, 4-96
- winsdelln, 4-98
- winserltn, 4-100
- winsnstr, 4-102
- winsstr, 4-102
- winstr, 4-105
- wmove, 4-119
- wnoutrefresh, 4-153
- wprintw, 4-146
- wredrawln, 4-151
- wrefresh, 4-153
- wscanw, 4-157
- wstandend, 4-18
- wstandout, 4-18
- wtimeout, 4-188
- wtouchln, 4-190

